

# Neural Network Principles

ROBERT L. HARVEY, Ph.D.

*Lincoln Laboratory  
Massachusetts Institute of Technology*



PRENTICE-HALL INTERNATIONAL, INC.

---

This edition may be sold only in those countries to which it is consigned by Prentice-Hall International. It is not to be re-exported and it is not for sale in the U.S.A., Mexico, or Canada.



©1994 by Prentice-Hall, Inc.  
A Paramount Communications Company  
Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632

The author and publisher of this book have used their best efforts in preparing this book. These efforts include the development, research and testing of the theories and programs to determine their effectiveness. The author and publisher make no warranty of any kind, expressed, or implied, with regard to these programs or the documentation contained in this book. The author and publisher shall not be liable in any event for incidental or consequential damages in connection with, or arising out of, the furnishing, performance, or use of these programs.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, in any form or by any means, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Note: Figure credits appear on pages 186-87.

Printed in the United States of America  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN 0-13-112194-4

Prentice-Hall International (UK) Limited, *London*  
Prentice-Hall of Australia Pty. Limited, *Sydney*  
Prentice-Hall Canada, Inc., *Toronto*  
Prentice-Hall Hispanoamericana, S.A., *Mexico*  
Prentice-Hall of India Private Limited, *New Delhi*  
Prentice-Hall of Japan, Inc., *Tokyo*  
Simon & Schuster Asia Pte. Ltd., *Singapore*  
Editora Prentice-Hall do Brasil, Ltda., *Rio de Janeiro*  
Prentice-Hall, Inc., *Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey*

*With love and affection  
for Rosie,  
Cara, Alyson, and Max*

# Contents

<i>PREFACE</i>	<i>vii</i>
<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Roadmap for Neural Networks	1
1.2 Overview of the Human Brain	4
Suggested References	11
Exercises	12
<b>2 NEURON PHYSICS AND STATE EQUATIONS</b>	<b>13</b>
2.1 Neuron Structure, Pulse Generation, and Propagation	14
2.2 Neuron State Equations	24
2.3 Network Equations	30
2.4 Recent Neural-Biology Findings	32
Suggested References	33
Exercises	34
<b>3 SIMPLE NETWORKS</b>	<b>36</b>
3.1 Outstars	36
3.2 Avalanches	41
	<b>iii</b>

3.3	Instars	44
3.4	Multiple Instars	47
3.5	Simple Lateral Interactions	48
3.6	Enhancement and Selection	51
3.7	Gated Dipoles	51
	Suggested References	54
	Exercises	55
<b>4</b>	<b>COMPLEX NETWORKS</b>	<b>57</b>
4.1	Cooperative-Competitive Systems	57
4.2	Adaptive Resonance Theory	64
4.3	Hopfield Neural Networks	81
4.4	Perceptions	86
	Suggested References	102
	Exercises	103
<b>5</b>	<b>VISION SYSTEMS</b>	<b>104</b>
5.1	Overview of Human Vision	104
5.2	An Architecture for Machine Vision	111
5.3	Discussion	126
	Suggested References	127
	Exercises	128
<b>6</b>	<b>HAND-EYE SYSTEMS</b>	<b>129</b>
6.1	Overview of Human Motor Control	129
6.2	Adaptive Eye-Hand Coordination	131
6.3	Planned Arm Movements	137
	Suggested References	144
	Exercises	145
<b>7</b>	<b>ADVANCED DESIGN METHODS</b>	<b>146</b>
7.1	Background on Neural Network Design Techniques	146
7.2	Genetic Algorithm Background	147
7.3	Formulation	149
7.4	Design Procedure	154

7.5	Examples	156
7.6	Scaling Laws for Cooperative-Competitive Neural Networks	161
7.7	Discussion	163
	Suggested References	164
	Exercises	164
<b>8</b>	<b>BRAIN CONTROL AND MODULATION SYSTEMS</b>	<b>165</b>
8.1	Introduction	165
8.2	Neurotransmitters	166
8.3	The Monamine Control System	168
8.4	Cortical Control Modules	170
8.5	Dysfunctions of the Control System	172
8.6	Summary	173
	Suggested References	174
	Exercise	174
<b>9</b>	<b>PHILOSOPHICAL IMPLICATIONS</b>	<b>175</b>
9.1	Consciousness	175
9.2	A Neural Network Interpretation	177
9.3	Final Remarks	177
	Suggested References	178
	<b>GLOSSARY</b>	<b>179</b>
	<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>	<b>181</b>
	<b>FIGURE CREDITS</b>	<b>186</b>
	<b>INDEX OF SYMBOLS</b>	<b>189</b>
	<b>INDEX</b>	<b>191</b>

## Preface

Neural networks is a subject lying at the intersection of psychology, mathematics, neuroscience, and systems theory. Currently this field is experiencing rapid development because of its applications. The applications include robotics, pattern recognition (for speech and vision systems), and understanding human brain-mind processes. This volume presents the basic ideas of neural networks.

The point of view is modeling biological nervous systems. This powerful and elegant approach to neural networks is attractive because it pushes system design toward the higher-performing biological systems. Moreover, these biological models give a springboard for a broad range of applications.

The text develops neural network theory and design principles as follows.

Chapters 1 and 2 outline the structure of the human brain, the physics of neurons, and derive the standard neuron state equations. In a sense, the remainder of the book presents the consequences of solving these equations.

Chapter 3 derives a set of simple networks. These networks can filter, recall, switch, amplify, and recognize input signals (patterns of neuron activation). Neural networks can also account for many experimental psychology results.

Chapter 4 discusses properties of general neuron groups. Adaptive resonance theory neural networks (ART-1 and ART-2) combine several functions simultaneously and can serve as memory modules. The chapter discusses the well-known Hopfield and perceptron neural networks by this unified biological approach, including new design procedures for both.

Chapters 5 and 6 apply the theory to synthesize neural networks for specialized tasks. These systems can process data from a variety of sensors and can approach human performance.

Chapter 5 outlines the design of machine vision systems. The chapter describes an architecture for a general purpose system that can learn to recognize stationary objects—such as vehicles or cancer cells—in their natural background.

Chapter 6 outlines motor control in human beings. It then presents two examples of robotic hand-eye systems.

Chapter 7 turns to the mathematical task of solving large systems of interconnected neurons. A very simple genetic algorithm gives new techniques for designing complex neural networks with fixed arbitrary connections. These modules can function as preprocessors, controllers, and feature detectors in complex systems.

Chapter 8 outlines global control and modulation in the human brain-mind. This material leads to a new understanding of many mental illnesses. Indeed, explaining human mental functions is an emerging application of neural networks.

Chapter 9 ends this volume by briefly considering some philosophical issues—especially consciousness—from a neural network view. Though perhaps controversial, these issues are nevertheless at the heart of many students' and researchers' interest in neural networks. In a sense, this short chapter may point to the next major milestone—designing neural networks that mimic high-level human processes.

The course for which this text is designed normally carries a prerequisite of courses in conventional signal processing. An effort was made, however, to keep the book self-contained.

The mathematical background needed is the customary undergraduate courses in advanced calculus, linear algebra, and ordinary differential equations. An elementary acquaintance with control theory and its simpler concepts of stability, is helpful for understanding general cooperative-competitive systems.

The exercises of each chapter have been limited to those extending the text, or illustrating a point. Pedantic museum pieces have been avoided. A solutions manual is available for instructors from the publisher. Some exercises may provoke original thought; some could be developed in a thesis.

References at the end of each chapter amplify the material discussed or treat points not touched on. The accompanying evaluations are purely personal, of course. It was felt necessary, however, to provide the student with some guide to the bewildering maze of literature on neural networks. The bibliography at the end of the book lists these references, along with many more. The list is not intended to be complete in any sense. The list contains the references used in writing this book. Thus, it serves to acknowledge my debt to these sources.

Notation is always a vexing question. Achieving a consistent, practical, unambiguous system of notation is impossible. A separate index at the end of the book lists the initial appearance of important symbols. Minor characters, appearing only once, are not included.

Terminology is also a bothersome issue, especially so with a subject cutting across many highly developed fields. To mitigate terminology problems, a glossary at the end of the book has common terms from philosophy, psychology, neuroscience, and neuroanatomy.

The present text evolved from courses on neural networks I taught at Northeastern University during 1990 to 1992 in the Graduate School of Engineering and the State-of-the-Art program. I am grateful to Professor John Proakis, chairman of the Northeastern

University Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, for many personal and official encouragements. I also wish to record my deep gratitude to the students in my courses. Their favorable reactions provided the impetus for this work.

I would like to thank Doctor Peter G. Anderson of the Rochester Institute of Technology, Doctor John Wu of Auburn University, and Professor N. K. Bose, HRB Systems Professor and Director of the Spatial and Temporal Signal Processing Center of the Pennsylvania State University, for reviewing the manuscript and offering valuable suggestions. The responsibility of the present book rests with me, of course. Suggestions are welcome.

I wish to thank M.I.T. Lincoln Laboratory for providing support and for a stimulating environment in which the book could be developed.

Finally, I wish to acknowledge others who helped me during this project: Gail Carpenter, Mike Carter, Paul DiCaprio, Dan Dudgeon, John Dugan, Mary Fouser, Stephen Grossberg, Alfred Gschwendtner, Karl Heinemann, David Hestenes, Patrick Hirschler-Marchand, Eric Kandel, Ernest Kent, Gloria Liias, Courosh Mehanian, Murali Menon, Charles Niessen, Linda Peterson, Barney Reiffen, Mark Silverman, Alex Sonnenschein, John Uhran, and Rose Harvey.

Robert L. Harvey

---

# Introduction

Intelligent machines with huge numbers of simple elements was a research subject for many science pioneers. References to this subject can be found in the scientific literature of the nineteenth century and, with increasing frequency, into the 1950s. Starting in the late fifties, a field known as neural networks (NNs) evolved. Today NNs is distinct from signal processing, artificial intelligence (AI), and neuroscience, though it overlaps these fields and others.

The purpose of this book is to develop NN principles from a biological viewpoint, to give NN design methods for applications, and to outline human brain-mind functioning by a NN model.

Any scientific brain-mind theory has a number of fundamental concepts, such as memory and consciousness. The notion of these and other concepts will be examined briefly. For the most part, however, many fundamental concepts will be assumed as terms whose meanings are familiar. A glossary summarizes some terms from contributing disciplines.

## 1.1 ROAD MAP FOR NEURAL NETWORKS

NNs is part of systems theory because of its mathematical style [6,18]. Figure 1.1 is a simplified road map of current systems theory. The selected topics are familiar to students in many fields, especially engineering. As shown, the figure defines the branches of systems theory by their main characteristics.

To the left in figure 1.1 are topics in conventional signal processing. These subjects are the basic tools for designing modern electronic systems. Typically, the first years of an electrical engineering or a computer engineering graduate program introduce these subjects.

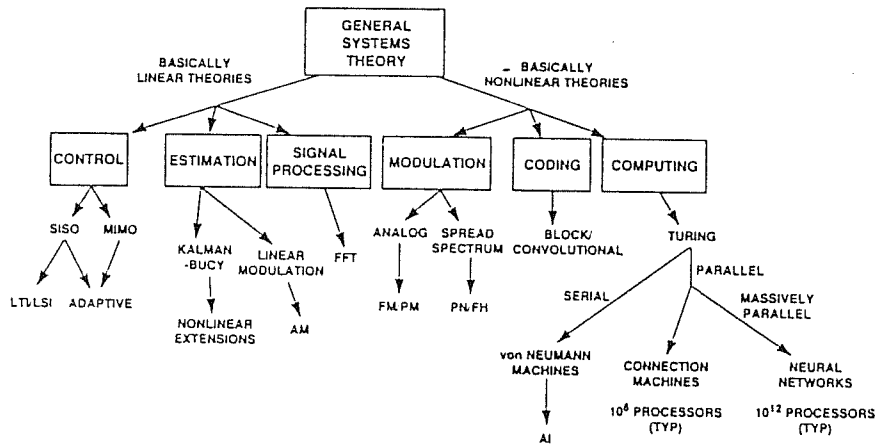


Figure 1.1 A simplified road map of systems theory. The major branches and subjects are shown. Neural networks is along a nonlinear branch. All branches share terminology, mathematical techniques, and with interpretation, results. Physics, chemistry, and the life sciences also contribute to neural networks and to the other branches.

To the right in figure 1.1 are branches of computing theory. AI is shown as being primarily serial processing, though much AI research is independent of the computer technology. For simplicity figure 1.1 omits many subdivisions of AI.

NNs branches from parallel processing on a branch labeled "massively parallel processing" by, say, one billion and more elements. The number of elements distinguishes NNs from connection machines. The NN branch, however, refers to the theory, not implementation, because current NNs rarely have more than a few thousand elements.

Figure 1.2 is the first of many definitions. The figure shows a NN schematically.

A neural network is a dynamical system with one-way interconnections. It carries out processing by its response to inputs. The processing elements are the nodes; the interconnects are directed links. Each processing element has a single output signal from which copies fan out.

Researchers approach NNs from many disciplines. Summarizing all the current approaches is difficult, because NNs is in rapid transition. Nevertheless, from an architectural viewpoint, current NN theory has three main branches: perceptron, associative memory, and biological model. These are suggestive labels, not standard terminology. Figure 1.3 shows the three branches and some leading researchers associated with each branch.

The perceptron branch, associated with Rosenblatt, is the oldest (late 1950s) and most developed. Currently, most NNs are perceptrons of one form or another (see section 4.4).

The associative memory branch is the source of the current revival in NNs (see section 4.3). Many researchers trace this revival to John Hopfield's 1982 paper (see chapter 1 references).

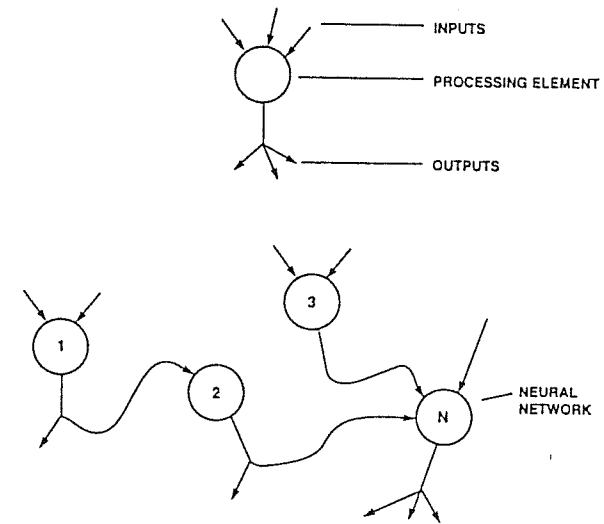


Figure 1.2 Schematic drawing of a neural network. Each processing element (neuron) has many signal inputs and a single output that branches into copies. The signal paths are one-way. The neurons are interconnected in large numbers and operate asynchronously.

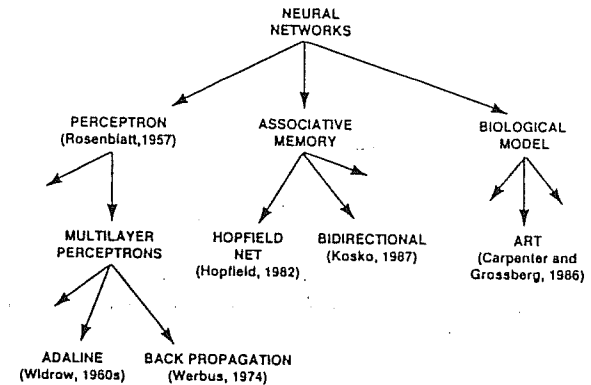


Figure 1.3 A simplified depiction of the major neural network schools. Perceptron, associative memory, and biological model are three categories of neural networks that overlap but differ by their emphasis in modeling, applications, and mathematics. The principles are the same for all schools.

The biological model branch, associated with Steve Grossberg and Gail Carpenter, is the fastest developing and might have the greatest long-term impact. This book treats topics in the three branches but emphasizes the biological model branch (see chapters 2, 3, and 4).

NNs has a general mathematical theory. Developed from basic principles, the theory models biological neurons and biological nervous systems. As shown in later chapters, the theory leads to many applications and verifiable predictions. In the scientific tradition, NN theory is constantly being refined by experimental findings. In a sense, the relationship between NN theory and the applications is like that of Maxwell's electromagnetism equations to circuits, antennas, and wave guides. That is, a general mathematical theory describes a natural phenomena, which is then applied to design useful systems.

## 1.2 OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN BRAIN

A major theme of this book is modeling the human brain by NNs. For context and reference, this section briefly reviews the human brain by describing its anatomy, input-output (I/O) channels, sensory characteristics, and gross mental functioning. The section starts with a summary of the biological evolution that produced the human brain.

In summary [4], about 35 million years ago an animal called aegyptopithecus appeared in present-day Egypt. Aegyptopithecus is known as a prehominoid primate and was neither a monkey nor an ape. Aegyptopithecus is considered ancestral to all living primates, including apes, monkeys, and human beings.

Eight million years later the earliest known hominoid, called Proconsul, appeared. Hominoids have highly specialized shaped limb bones, though their skulls and teeth are generalized. They are distinguished from monkeys, which retain generalized shaped limb bones.

About five to ten million years ago the ancestors of the gorilla, chimpanzees, and human beings split from a common stock. Australopithecines, which were early hominoids with characteristics intermediate between apes and later human beings, appeared two to five million years ago.

In general, the last three million years of fossil record is well known and well documented. Earlier fossil records have gaps. Two million years ago the genus homo emerged, with a distinctively larger brain and a pelvic and limb structure like present-day human beings. About 250 thousand years ago appeared an archaic form of our own species, homo sapiens.

Around 35 thousand years ago an early kind of human being appeared in Europe, called Cro-Magnon after the French cave producing the first remains. Paleontologists believe Cro-Magnon and other homo sapiens evolved from earlier types in Africa and spread to Europe where they displaced the occupying Neanderthals, another kind of archaic sapien. Since the Cro-Magnon, the homo sapien has spread worldwide, and recent evolutionary changes include local adaptations and the well-known "races."

Thus, in the geologically short time span of 35 million years, hominoids underwent considerable evolution to become homo sapien, the most versatile hominoid.

A plot of brain volume (from fossil skulls) versus time shows that over the past five million years, the hominoid brain volume increased about one percent per 50 thousand years, so in the last 50 thousand years the human brain has been essentially unchanged. This brain inspires NN research.

Today the human brain ranges in weight from 1 to 2 kg, with an average of 1349 gm for men and 1206 gm for women. Its volume is about 1400 cm<sup>3</sup>. Research shows no systematic relationship between intelligence and an individual's race, gender, or brain size [9].

To summarize its anatomy [9,21], the human brain has three main parts or regions: the forebrain, midbrain, and hindbrain. Table 1.1 summarizes the brain's main anatomical regions, structures, and gross functions. Figure 1.4 shows a sketch of these main structures.

TABLE 1.1 MAJOR ANATOMICAL BRAIN REGIONS, STRUCTURES, AND FUNCTIONS

Region	Structure	Gross Function
1. Forebrain	Neocortex (two hemispheres)	
	Occipital	Vision
	Temporal	Hearing, speech
	Parietal	Vision
	Frontal	Cognition
	Amygdala	Emotion
	Hippocampus	Emotion
	Basal ganglia Septum	Motor Emotion
2. Midbrain	Thalamus	I/O to forebrain
	Hypothalamus	Internal regulation
3. Hindbrain	Pons	Sleeping, waking, attention
	Brainstem	Sleeping, waking, attention
	Medulla	Sleeping, waking, attention
	Cerebellum	Motor

The forebrain contains the cerebral cortex, or neocortex. For protection it floats on a pool of fluid. The neurons, cells primarily responsible for the brain's signal processing, are near the outer surface. The interconnection paths, called axons, are interior and connect nearby and widely separated brain areas. Besides the neocortex, the forebrain contains other structures, for example, the amygdaloid complex. The forebrain primarily does processing for the senses (for example vision) and higher cognitive functions.

The midbrain contains the thalamus and hypothalamus. These structures are the I/O ports and internal regulators of, for example, appetite.

The hindbrain contains the brainstem structures and the cerebellum. The brainstem regulates consciousness; the cerebellum regulates motor control.

About 70 percent of the human nervous system is neocortex. Although it has many wrinkles and folds, neocortex topology is nearly two dimensional. Indeed, if spread flat, the neocortex is two thin continuous sheets connected by a fiber called the corpus callosum.



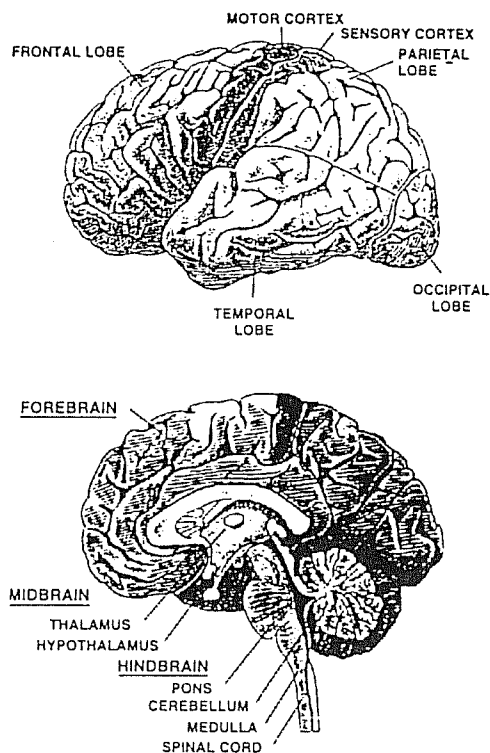


Figure 1.4 Schematic function and structure map of the human brain. (From Bloom, et al. *Brain, Mind, and Behavior*. Reprinted by permission of W. H. Freeman and Co., 1985.)

The neocortex sheets vary in thickness from 1.5 mm to 5 mm (2.5 mm is typical) and has six layers, though researchers have distinguished up to twelve layers in some regions. Indeed, measuring neocortex area is difficult because of its many folds. Recent estimates give 1,600 cm<sup>2</sup> for the planar area of each sheet, or 3,200 cm<sup>2</sup> for the entire adult cortex.

While the neuron density varies in the neocortex, remarkably, the number of neurons under each unit area is nearly constant across the sheet (and from species to species!). The surface density of neurons is about eight million per cm<sup>2</sup>. For the striate cortex of primates, however, (the area involved with vision and about 15 percent of the total), the surface density is about 20 million per cm<sup>2</sup>. These areas and densities suggest about 30 billion neurons, or active elements, in the neocortex. (The nonneural cells in the neocortex, the glial cells, outnumber the neurons about 10 to 50 times.)

Mapping the brain regions and their functions is an immense and ongoing activity. In practice, researchers distinguish brain areas by differences in nerve cell and fiber structure.

The standard mapping of the human brain is due to Brodmann (1909). The 52 Brodmann areas or modules are from anatomy or function, or both. Figure 1.5 shows some

of the 52 Brodmann maps. Relating Brodmann area to function is often straightforward, for example, areas 17, 18, and 19 are associated with vision. Recent studies suggest the neocortex has at most about 200 modules and that finer subdivision is probably not helpful for understanding its operation.

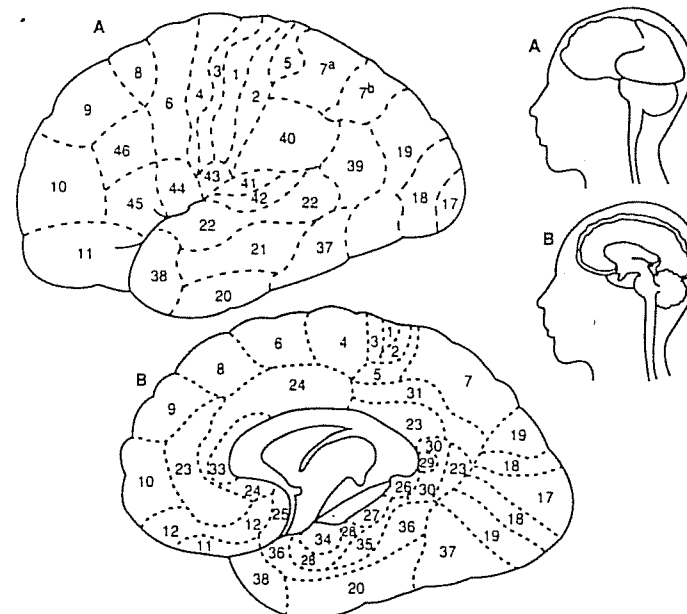


Figure 1.5 Brodmann's map of the human brain. The numbered areas chiefly reflect cell structure. Some are also connected to function. For example, areas 17, 18, and 19 are associated with vision. (From The Diagram Group. *The Brain—A User's Manual*. Reprinted by permission of Diagram Visual Information Limited, 1987; originally from Brodmann, 1908.)

Besides the anatomical description is the system description. Table 1.2 summarizes the major brain-mind systems and their functions. As shown, the major brain systems are sensory, motor, internal regulation, behavioral, and emotional. Research shows that each system is distributed over many areas of the brain.

To operate, the brain needs I/O signals. Major I/O channels to the outside world are the 12 pairs of cranial nerves, shown in figure 1.6 and described in table 1.3. As shown, some nerve bundles are one-way; others are two-way.

Other I/O channels are along the spinal cord (in an evolutionary sense the brain is an outgrowth of the spinal cord). The spine gets sensor signals, sends commands to the muscles, and makes simple decisions (reflex actions).

TABLE 1.2 MAJOR BRAIN SYSTEMS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

System	Function
Sensory	Vision
	Hearing
	Olfaction
	Taste
Motor	Somatic sensation
	Reflexes
	Movement of joints
Internal regulation	Appetite
	Sex
	Salt/water balances
Behavioral	Sleeping/waking
	Attention
Limbic	Emotions
	(motivation and priorities)

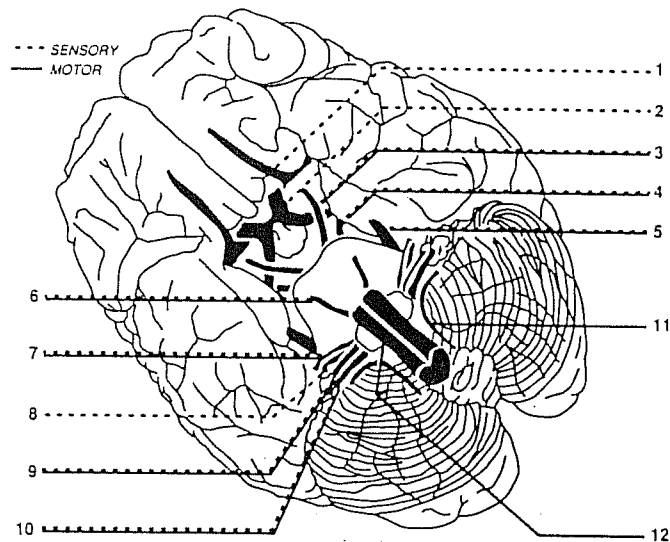


Figure 1.6 Schematic diagram of the cranial nervous system. Twelve pairs of nerves are important input-output signal paths to the brain. Table 1.3 describes their function. (From The Diagram Group. *The Brain—A User's Manual*. Reprinted by permission of Diagram Visual Information Limited, 1987.)

TABLE 1.3 THE CRANIAL NERVES AND THEIR FUNCTION

Nerve (12 Pairs)	Signal Direction	Sense	Motor
1. Olfactory	I	Smell	—
2. Optic	I	Vision	—
3. Oculomotor	I and O	—	Eye motion
4. Trochlear	I and O	—	Eye motion
5. Trigeminal	I and O	Facial sensations	Jaw motion
6. Abducens	I and O	Facial sensations	Eye motion
7. Facial	I and O	Taste	Facial expressions
8. Acoustic	I	Hearing	—
9. Glossopharyngeal	I and O	Taste	Pharynx/speech
10. Vagus	I and O	Breathing/heartbeat/digestion	—
11. Accessory	O	—	Neck/shoulders
12. Hypoglossal	O	—	Tongue/speech

I = input to brain; O = output from brain.

As shown in table 1.4, at intervals along the spine, 31 nerve pairs pass through gaps in the surrounding bone vertebrae.

TABLE 1.4 THE SPINAL NERVES AND FUNCTIONS

Spinal group	Nerve pairs	Body area
Cervical	8	Throat, chest, arms, hands
Thoracic	12	Top of breast bone to bottom of ribs
Lumbar	5	Front of legs and feet
Sacral	5	Soles of feet and back of legs
Coccygeal	1	Soles of feet and back of legs

Several million cranial nerves link the brain to sense organs in the head, and about 10 million nerves run from the brain to the spinal cord.

The five traditional senses are sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch. For reference, table 1.5 summarizes some characteristics of human vision, hearing, and touch [82].

The minimum perceptible visual input approaches the quantum mechanical limit for detecting photons (see chapter 1 exercises). Human vision also has, in engineering terminology, a dynamic range of 90 dB and a relative color discrimination of 7 bits.

Standard terminology for I/O is as follows. Nerve endings are one of three kinds. Exteroceptors bring information from outside the body, for example, vision. Interoceptors bring information originating from within the body. Proprioceptors bring information about joint position and muscle tension. The direction of signal flow is either afferent (input) or efferent (output).

Standard terminology for naming brain regions is as follows. Some brain structures are superior (above) or inferior (below). Names of brain structures are also from the bone

TABLE 1.5 SELECTED CHARACTERISTICS OF THREE PRIMARY HUMAN SENSES (From Sheridan and Ferrel. *Man-Machine Systems*. Adapted by permission of the MIT Press, 1974)

Attribute	Vision	Hearing	Touch
Minimum perceptible magnitude	$3 \times 10^{-10}$ erg	$10^{-9}$ erg/cm <sup>2</sup>	$3 \times 10^{-2}$ erg
Maximum tolerable magnitude	$10^9$ times min	$10^{13}$ times min	$10^4$ times minimum
Relative magnitude discrimination	570	325 at midfreq	15 at 200–300 Hz
Absolute magnitude discrimination	5–7 steps on gray scale	5–7 steps at 1000 to 2000 Hz	5–7 steps at 200 to 300 Hz
Frequency range	0.3 to 1.5 $\mu$ m	20 to 20,000 Hz	0 to 10,000 Hz
Relative frequency discrimination	128	1800 at 60 dB	200
Absolute frequency discrimination	12–13 hues	5–9 up to 80 for perfect pitch	depends on skin area

covering the structure. Thus, the inferior temporal cortex (ITC) is the brain area below and under the temporal bone (area 20 in figure 1.5).

Considering gross mental functioning, evidence from brain-damaged individuals suggests the cortex halves have specialized functions. Localizing function in brain areas is an active research topic, and research is refining the findings.

To a first approximation, for most individuals, the right hemisphere processes information as complete patterns and is sensitive to, for example, static shapes.

The left hemisphere processes information sequentially (or dynamically), and thus is involved in, for example, speech and language. The vision areas lie in the two hemispheres and thus are sensitive to pattern and motion.

In human brain functioning, research has two major directions: localizing function and discovering mechanisms. Localization usually tells little about the logical operations of brain function. Localization, however, can sometimes set limits on the processing (see chapter 1 exercises).

Discovery of mechanisms is limited by experimental techniques, especially for complex behavior. The limitations include recording time of a neuron, methods for recording from millions of neurons, and the means for storing and interrelating data. Many researchers believe a computer simulation might be the best explanation for various kinds of behavior.

Research shows neuron structure and signaling are remarkably similar throughout the brain. That is, meaning is associated with brain area and not the kind of signal. Thus, "seeing" is signals in the vision system; "hearing" is signals in the auditory system.

The phenomenon of consciousness interests students and researchers alike. Consciousness is a difficult phenomenon to define, let alone model or build into machines. Indeed, many researchers distinguish between consciousness and self-awareness.

Consciousness, many believe, resides in the reticular formation, a group of cells within the brain stem. Nerves from this area go to all parts of the midbrain and forebrain and arouse these regions. The reticular formation is likened to a power supply driving the neocortex.

Without reticular signals the brain grows sleepy. Damage to the reticular formation causes unconsciousness; irreversible reticular damage causes coma.

Self-awareness is the result of neocortex activity, according to many theories. Edelman's theory (1977) [29] postulates that awareness is interchanging signals among neuron groups. In Edelman's theory, matching current inputs and stored memories produces what we call awareness. Nonawareness corresponds to nonmatching between these patterns.

Self-awareness is explained by Dennett (1991) [26] as many simultaneous, parallel brain activities. Indeed, the phenomenon cannot be localized in time or area. Dennett's model also explains many findings and paradoxes.

Recently a wholly biological mechanism for self-awareness is emerging from physical findings, summarized by Black [8] (see chapter 2). Self-awareness is taken up again in chapter 9 and discussed briefly by the NN theory developed in the intervening text.

In summary, the basic hypothesis of this book is that brain-mind functioning, normal and abnormal, is explainable by its structure. These functions include moving, sensing, and talking. The hypothesis also includes "higher functions" such as hoping, dreaming, and thinking.

This hypothesis, however, is controversial and some writers have challenged a wholly physical model for the human brain-mind system (see chapter 1 references).

The traditional paradigm of philosophy and cognition science is that an objective reality "out there" is simply mirrored by mental representations "in here." Moreover, the categories of individuals for classifying experiences are universal and invariant.

The new paradigm, suggested by NN theory and the life sciences, is that mental processes emerge from physical mechanisms. Indeed, the classifying categories are from prototypes defined in unique and unexpected ways. Chapter 9 considers some philosophical implications.

## SUGGESTED REFERENCES<sup>1</sup>

- F. BLOOM, *Brain, Mind, and Behavior* and *The Diagram Group, The Brain—A User's Manual*. These are two surveys of neuroscience for the educated reader. They have many well-drawn sketches and diagrams. Bloom's book was written as part of a teaching package for a TV series and has a psychological viewpoint, while the Diagram Group has a medical viewpoint. Both are nonmathematical.
- S. GOLDBERG, *Clinical Neuroanatomy made Ridiculously Easy*. This is a book intended to help nurses, medical students, and paramedical personnel master essential parts of neuroanatomy. The book is brief and readable. It gives many examples of dysfunctions. The mnemonics and humor in this book are an effective educational device, which unfortunately is not frequently tried in academic education.
- E. KENT, *The Brains of Men and Machines*. An excellent book describing human brain architecture by processing modules. Although it does not treat neural networks, it has descriptions of perceptual functions, for example vision, written from a signal processing point of view. The book is nonmathematical with many block diagrams.

<sup>1</sup> For convenience the references at the end of each chapter are listed only by short title. Full bibliographical description will be found in the bibliography at the end of the book.

- R. PENROSE, *The Emperor's New Mind*. This book discusses computers, minds, and the laws of physics on an advanced level. Penrose argues for a non-algorithmic basis for consciousness. The book challenges the basic hypothesis of the text. This book can serve as an excellent point of departure for reading on the basic ideas involved in neural networks. The mathematics is at a senior undergraduate level.
- D. RUMELHART, *Parallel Distributed Processing*. This two-volume book is a standard reference and is a unique source for many specialized topics. Chapter 20 is an excellent summary of anatomy and physiology of the cerebral cortex.
- G. EDELMAN and V. MOUNTCASTLE, *The Mindful Brain*. The first chapter describes Mountcastle's column organization of the cerebral cortex, a major finding in neuroscience. The second chapter by Edelman connects the column structure of neuron groups (originated by Mountcastle) to consciousness. A theory of consciousness is an active research area, and new results are published monthly. These two chapters are excellent background to current research.
- M. MINSKY and S. PAPERT, *Perceptrons: An Introduction to Computational Geometry*. Many researchers credit this classical and controversial (1960s) book with stopping research in highly parallel networks (a claim denied by the authors). Hopfield's paper later revived interest in neural networks. Minsky and Papert based their arguments on two-layer perceptrons (see chapter 4). Most of Minsky's and Papert's conclusions do not hold for multilayer perceptrons and other complex neural networks. The book gives background of modern neural network theory.
- J. HOPFIELD, *Neural Networks and Physical Systems with Emergent Collective Computational Abilities*. This is a landmark paper (1982) in neural networks. It gives an algorithm for an asynchronous parallel processor, including associative memories from neurobiology (see chapter 4). This paper created interest in neural networks after the field lost its popularity in the 1960s. The reference is recommended for background because its neural network is a special instance of the modern theory developed in the text.

### EXERCISES

1. Assume the minimum perceptible visual stimulus magnitude is  $3 \times 10^{-10}$  ergs. What is the approximate minimum number of photons the human eye can detect? Is the human brain a quantum measurement instrument?
2. Assuming the resolution at fovea with good contrast is about one minute of arc, how close is the human eye to the diffraction limit? Assuming diffraction limits optics, what is the approximate spacing of the photon detectors at fovea?
3. Assume the following:
  - pulse frequency along axons = 100 Hz
  - pulses needed to fire a neuron in each module = 2 to 5
  - pulse propagation speed along axon = 100 m/s
  - time to recognize an object = 0.5 s
 Assuming at least one layer of neurons in each module, about how many modules in series are in human vision for initial recognition?

## Neuron Physics and State Equations

This chapter presents the "standard model" for neurons. For the historian, the model's development is a rich story filled with false starts, theoretical preconceptions, and the interplay of personalities. The model's equations are the starting point to design systems and to understand human brain-mind functioning. This chapter summarizes the biological basis for the model in sufficient detail for understanding its derivation and—if needed—for refining it to depict the underlying biology more closely.

How sure are we that the standard model is reasonably correct? Will discoveries overthrow it and replace it with a significantly different model? Perhaps. In fact, section 2.4 discusses recent new research findings not yet part of the standard model.

If supplanted, however, the standard model will have played a valuable role because testing ideas and designing systems is respectable (though only in the last decade or so), especially since the national DARPA study [23] which surveyed the NN state of the art and identified applications.

Moreover, researchers commonly justify their programs with the standard model. Thus, the model gives a shared language allowing designers, researchers, and sponsors to appreciate and support each other. As seen in later chapters, the model also gives a powerful new tool to apply to real problems.

If researchers develop a better theory someday, it will probably be traced to results for improving the standard model.

## 2.1 NEURON STRUCTURE, PULSE GENERATION, AND PROPAGATION

The accepted human brain model is a system of  $10^{10}$  to  $10^{12}$  neurons of rather uniform material and structure. Studies show the neurons organized into about 200 modules with a few basic interneural kinds of signals. Groups of neurons with precise interconnections produce the systems and the functions of natural brain-minds. This section describes the traditional biochemical view of how a prototypical neuron functions in the central nervous system (CNS). It also introduces the basic language and gives a brief review of neurochemistry.

Summarizing [8,9,21,22,27,56], figure 2.1 shows a typical neuron. The neuron cell body, containing the nucleus and cytoplasm, is like other cells in basic structure and basic function. A neuron cell body differs from other cells because of the dendrites and axons.

Dendrites are branchlike protrusions from the neuron cell body. A typical cell has many. The receiving zones of impulses, called synapses, are on the cell body and dendrites. Some kinds of neuron have spines on the dendrites, thus creating more receiving sites.

An axon, the transmit channel of the impulses, is a long, fiberlike extension of the cell body. Each neuron has one axon, which branches or fans out to other neurons. The fan-out is typically 1:10,000 and more. The same signal, with varying time delays, propagates along each branch. Indeed, the large fan-out produces the brain's parallelism.

Each branch end has a synapse. A typical synapse is a bulblelike structure at the end of an axon branch. The synapses are on the cell body, dendrites, and spines, shown in figure 2.2. There may be  $10^4$  to  $10^5$  synapses on a neuron.

Between the synapse and the target neuron is a narrow gap, typically 20 nanometers wide. Special molecules called neurotransmitters cross the synaptic gap to receptor sites on the target neuron. The flow of neurotransmitter molecules is the transmission of signals between synapse and neuron.

The signals from a neuron are inhibitory or excitatory, not both. Excitatory signals tend to fire the target neuron; inhibitory signals tend to prevent firing. A neuron fires, that is, sends a signal along its axon, depending on the time-integrated effect of all signals crossing its synaptic gaps.

Moreover, each neuron sends only one kind of signal. That is, a neuron cannot be excitatory to some target neurons and inhibitory to others. (Recent studies show that some neurons in the retina may be excitatory and inhibitory, but they are the only known exceptions [69].)

An electrochemical mechanism produces and propagates signals along the axon. At equilibrium (no signaling) the interior of the neuron and its axon is negative relative to the exterior because the interior has an excess of negative ions, while the exterior has an excess of positive ions. The negative ions are  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{PhO}^-$ , and carbon-oxygen acids. The positive ions are  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^+$ , and  $\text{Mg}^+$ .

A biological ion pump, powered by mitochondria, causes the ion concentrations in and around the neuron. Mitochondria are structures in the neuron using and transferring the energy produced by burning fuel (sugar) and molecular oxygen. In a sense, mitochondria are microscopic energy sources.

The excess of positive and negative charges generates an electric field across the neuron surface, shown in figure 2.3. The plasma membrane of the neuron holds the charges

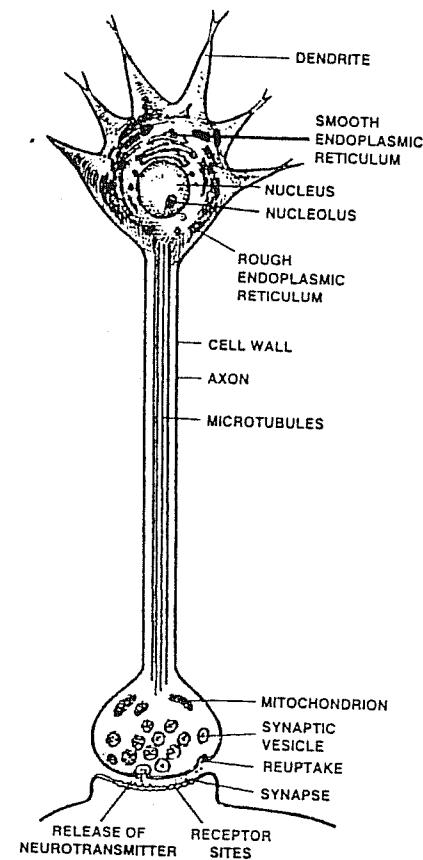


Figure 2.1 Structure of a typical mammalian neuron. A neuron functions metabolically like other cells. It has a single long axon from the cell body to the synapses. Dendrites are outgrowths of the cell body and form synapses with other neurons. (Figure 2.2 shows more detail.) The synaptic terminal stores neurotransmitters in vesicles. Microtubules provide structural rigidity and transport material along the axon. (From Bloom, et al. *Brain, Mind and Behavior*. Reprinted by permission of W. H. Freeman and Co., 1985.)

apart. The membrane is selective to diffusion of particular molecules, and its diffusion selectivity varies with time and length along the axon. Indeed, varying the membrane diffusivity produces and propagates signal pulses along the axon and across the synaptic gaps.

The axon signal pulses, also called action potentials, are described electrically by current-voltage characteristics, shown in figure 2.4. Injecting a current pulse into the axon causes the potential across the membrane to vary. Chemical signals at excitatory synapses inject current into the axon. As described next, the current pulses stimulate an excitatory neuron to fire.

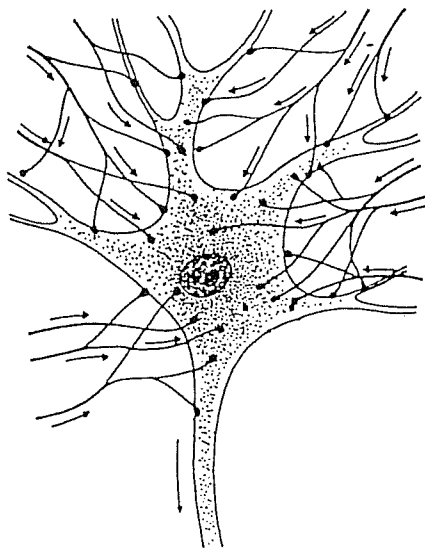


Figure 2.2 A neuron may be connected with others by tens of thousands of synaptic contacts on its dendrites and cell body. The synaptic contacts are small compared with the cell body. (From The Diagram Group. *The Brain—A User's Manual*. Reprinted by permission of Diagram Visual Information Limited, 1987.)

The equilibrium potential of the axon is about  $-70$  mV. When injected with an inhibitory (hyperpolarization) signal pulse, the response is a RC-type, that is exponential, followed by relaxation to equilibrium. When injected with a small excitatory pulse (depolarization), the response is also a RC-type response followed by relaxation.

When the injection current causes the voltage to exceed threshold (typically  $-40$  mV), the potential rapidly continues to rise. Thus, the current produces a single pulse with a peak-to-peak amplitude of about  $120$  mV and a duration of  $1$  ms.

A pulse, caused by injected current, propagates without weakening along all branches of the axon. A complex, not fully understood sequence involving the ions maintains the pulse shape and strength.

A brief description of the production and propagation of a pulse by a step-by-step electrochemical process follows, and is also shown in figure 2.5.

1. Chemical signals at excitatory synapses inject current in the axon.
2. Rising positive charges in the cell trigger  $\text{Na}^+$  gates along the membrane to open (threshold about  $-40$  mV).
3. An influx of  $\text{Na}^+$  causes the interior to go positive ( $+60$  mV). The influx is caused by the electrical potential and the concentration gradients.
4. The positive interior causes adjacent  $\text{Na}^+$  gates to open so that an impulse propagates down the axon. The propagating speed is  $0.5$  m/s to  $120$  m/s depending on the axon diameter. (For example, during each pulse in a  $1\text{-}\mu\text{m}$  diameter squid axon, about  $3$  picomoles of  $\text{Na}$  per  $\text{cm}^2$  enter the axon.)

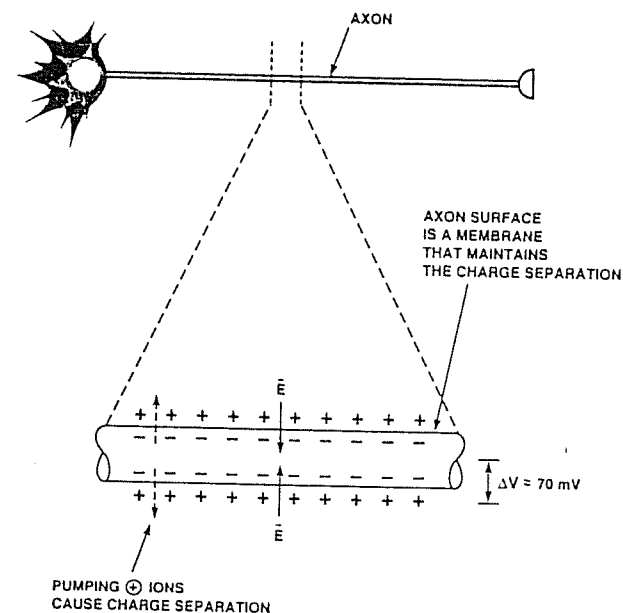
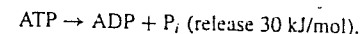


Figure 2.3 The movement of electrically charged ions across the neuron's cell wall membrane produces the pulses along an axon. At equilibrium a neuron has a net negative charge inside and a net positive charge outside caused by the pumping of sodium and potassium ions (sodium outward, potassium inward). The charges produce an inward-directed electrical field and a voltage potential of about  $-60$  to  $-75$  mV.

5. The  $\text{Na}^+$  gates close by the outflow of  $\text{K}^+$  from the interior.
6.  $\text{Na}$  collects in the interior from each pulse while the exterior loses  $\text{K}$ . The recovery to equilibrium is by a  $\text{Na-K}$  exchange process.

The  $\text{Na-K}$  exchange, or pump, is driven by the hydrolysis of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). ATP is widely used in nature to furnish energy for chemical reactions. ATP spontaneously goes to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and inorganic phosphate ( $\text{P}_i$ ) by hydrolysis with the release of  $30$  kJ/mol. That is



This energy can be used to drive a biochemical reaction that might not normally proceed.

For example, consider the reaction  $X \rightarrow Y$  for which  $20$  kJ/mol must be supplied under standard conditions. If the conversion of  $X$  to  $Y$  is coupled to ATP hydrolysis, the combined reaction would be

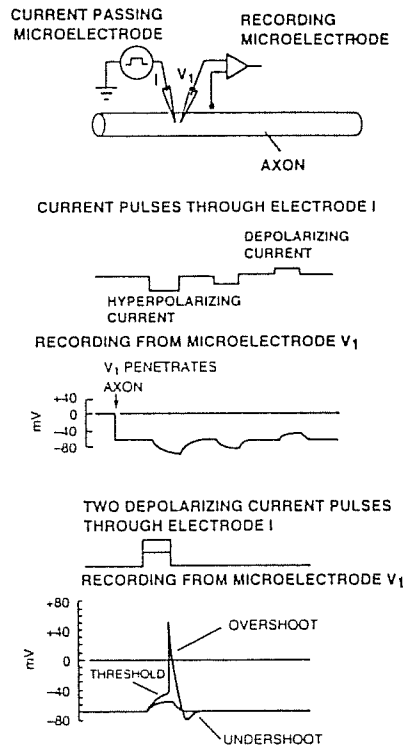
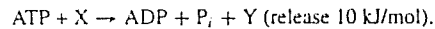


Figure 2.4 Axon current-voltage characteristics. Injecting a negative current pulse (hyperpolarization) into an axon at equilibrium causes a RC-type of response. Injecting a small positive current pulse (depolarization) also causes a RC-kind of response. Injecting a depolarizing current so that the voltage exceeds a threshold causes a pulse with an amplitude of about 120 mV and a duration of about 1 ms. (From Kuffler, et al. *From Neuron to Brain*. Adapted by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc., 1984).

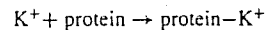


Under standard conditions the reaction proceeds spontaneously.

Many versions of the Na-K pump are energetically plausible, and it remains to be determined which version occurs in living cells.

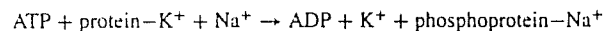
Summarizing [28], a proposed model for the Na-K pump is the following sequence.

1. Exterior reactions:



The protein-K<sup>+</sup> diffuses to the interior by a concentration gradient.

2. Interior reactions:



The phosphoprotein-Na<sup>+</sup> complex diffuses to the exterior by a concentration gradient.

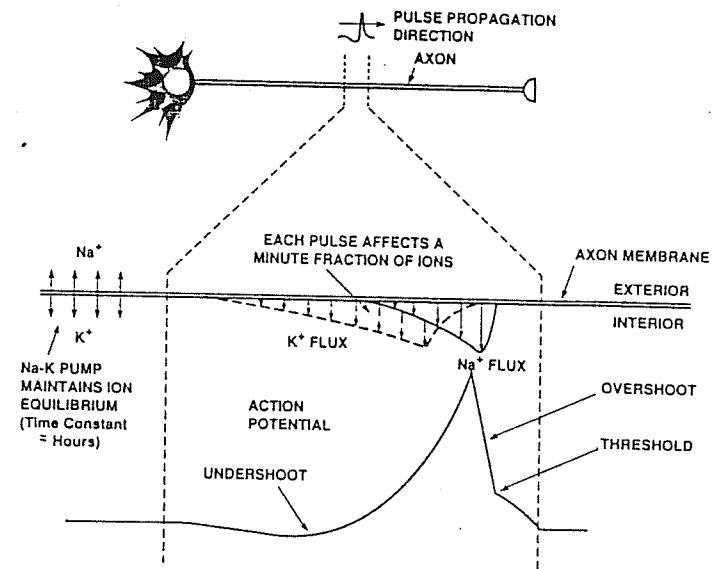
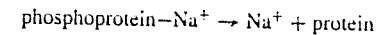


Figure 2.5 Process for generating a pulse in an axon. Sodium and potassium channels cover the axon membrane. At equilibrium the channels are closed. When a depolarization voltage exceeds threshold the channels open for about 1 ms during which time about 6000 sodium ions pass. The flow of ions causes a pulse, and the axon voltage goes from about -70 mV to +50 mV. The channels then close spontaneously and recovery to equilibrium occurs by an energy-driven ion pump, which is also part of the membrane.

3. Exterior reactions:



This last reaction takes place because of an enzyme.

The pump model assumes a carrier protein molecule shuttling back and forth across the membrane, transporting K<sup>+</sup> on the inward trip and Na<sup>+</sup> on the outward trip. Movement of the carrier-passenger complex is driven by a concentration gradient, this gradient being determined by the state of the phosphorylation of the carrier.

In comparison, [22] describes another pump model. In this model, a large protein molecule (mol. wt. = 120,000), called Na<sup>+</sup>K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase, is oriented in the membrane with part of the protein exposed at other faces. The protein neither rotates nor shuttles back and forth. Three Na<sup>+</sup> ions bind to sites on the inner surface, and two K<sup>+</sup> ions bind to sites on the outer surface. The protein then undergoes a conformational change and the three Na<sup>+</sup>

ions are pumped outward, possibly by the creation of a channel. The two  $K^+$  ions are then moved inward, by another conformational change, back to the original shape.

The Na-K pump has been studied in detail because of its importance. The mechanism, however, for transporting  $Na^+$  out of and  $K^+$  into the membrane is not known in detail, although most researchers now believe that conformational changes in the Na-K-ATPase enable the ion movements.

The above description of a propagating axon pulse assumes a smooth, uniform axon surface. In fact a sheath of myelin with gaps along its length frequently encloses many axons. The basic mechanism, however, still holds. With myelin sheaths, the pulse propagates by jumping from gap to gap along the axon, resulting in higher propagation speeds.

While the model describes the production and propagation of a single pulse, one pulse does not carry information. In fact, many processes produce pulses randomly.

Research shows that encoding of information is by the frequency of the pulse train, a process called frequency shift keying (FSK) in digital communications. The frequency is in the range of 10 to 100 Hz.

An example of neural FSK is in the measurement of muscle motion. Muscle spindles, a kind of sensor, measure the rate and extent of muscle stretch. As shown in figure 2.6, mechanical motion leads to local depolarization in the nerve terminal by locally decreasing the electrical field. The depolarization, equivalent to a current injection, causes a train of impulses along the axon when currents exceed the threshold. The frequency of the impulses is proportional to the depolarization. In turn, depolarization is proportional to the mechanical movement. Thus, the pulse train frequency encodes the signal that measures the muscle motion.

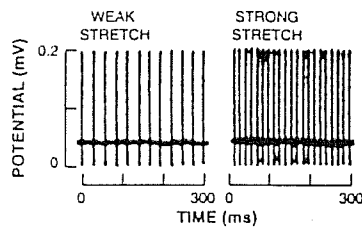


Figure 2.6 Pulse trains produced by stretching muscles. A sensory nerve responds to the stretching of a muscle by firing at a rate proportional to the stretch. (From Kuffler, et al. *From Neuron to Brain*. Reprinted by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc., 1984.)

When a pulse train signal reaches a synapse, synaptic transmission transfers the signal to the target neuron. Synaptic transmission is the chemical transfer of signals from one neuron to another across the synaptic gap. The signaling is an extension of nerve impulse transmission and membrane potential characteristics. While direct electrical interactions among neighboring neurons is possible, chemical transmission is the dominant mechanism of signaling among neurons.

Synaptic transmission raises two main questions: How do neurotransmitters act on the postsynaptic neuron to produce excitation and inhibition? How does the presynaptic terminal release the neurotransmitters?

Figure 2.7 shows the prototypical model of a synapse.

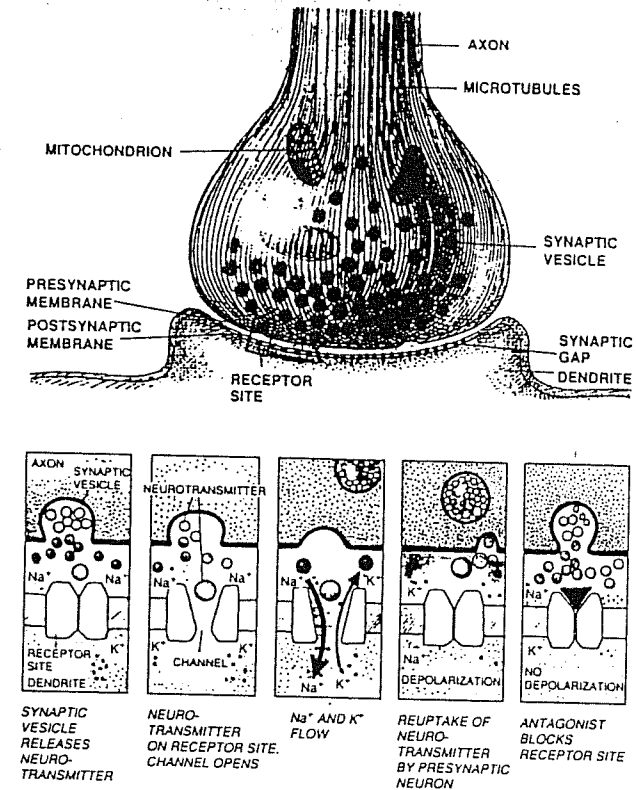


Figure 2.7 A step-by-step sequence of neurotransmitter release and recovery (reuptake) at a hypothetical synapse. (From Bloom, et al. *Brain, Mind and Behavior*. Reprinted by permission of W. H. Freeman and Co., 1985.)

Starting with the first question, increasing the permeability to  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  of the post-junctional membrane produces synaptic excitation, leading to a depolarizing synaptic potential. Excitation results from driving the membrane potential over threshold. A common excitatory neurotransmitter is acetylcholine (ACh).

Summarizing [56], the sequence for synaptic excitation by ACh is as follows.

1. Presynapse sites release  $ACh^+$  (see below).
2.  $ACh^+$  diffuses across the synaptic gap to the postsynaptic membrane.
3. The postsynaptic membrane permeability to  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  greatly increases.



4.  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  ion currents across the membrane drive the potential in the target neuron to the  $-20$  mV-to- $0$  mV range. A large amplifying mechanism takes place because one  $\text{ACh}^+$  ion causes about 1000  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$  ions to cross the membrane.

Increasing the permeability to  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $\text{K}^+$  of the post-junctional membrane produces synaptic inhibition, leading to a hyperpolarizing synaptic potential. Driving the membrane potential away from threshold gives inhibition. Inhibitory neurotransmitters are mainly unknown; however, one identified inhibitory neurotransmitter is  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA).

The sequence for synaptic inhibition is as follows.

1. Presynapse sites release an inhibitory neurotransmitter (see below).
2. The neurotransmitter diffuses across the synaptic gap to the postsynaptic membrane.
3. The postsynaptic membrane permeability to  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $\text{K}^+$  greatly increases.
4.  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $\text{K}^+$  ion currents across the membrane drive the potential of the target neuron below  $-70$  mV.

The differences in excitation and inhibition are primarily membrane permeability differences. Inhibition, however, is difficult to account for by changes only in postsynaptic permeability.

Figure 2.8 shows an axoaxonic synapse where an inhibitory synapse goes to the presynaptic junction of an excitatory synapse. Researchers have found, by electron microscopy, axoaxonic synapses at many locations in the mammalian CNS. (NN modeling rarely assumes axoaxonic mechanisms.)

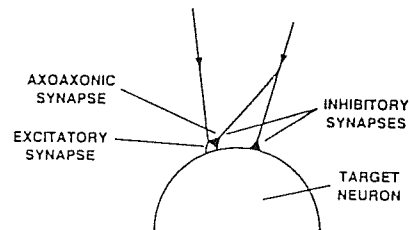


Figure 2.8 Presynaptic inhibition. An excitatory synapse is affected by an inhibitory axoaxonic synapse. The effect is to reduce the neurotransmitter quanta released from the excitatory terminal.

Presynaptic inhibition is helpful when many pathways converge because the system can selectively suppress inputs. The selection cannot be done by postsynaptic conductance, which changes the whole target cell. Researchers do not know the relative importance of presynaptic and postsynaptic inhibition in the CNS.

Considering the second question of presynaptic release, the release of neurotransmitters in the synaptic gap is a complex process. Observations show that an action potential pulse in the presynaptic fiber normally gives rise, after a delay, to a large depolarizing potential in the postsynaptic membrane. The depolarizing potential usually reaches threshold and produces an action potential.

Figure 2.9 shows the presynaptic and postsynaptic potentials. The maximum excitatory postsynaptic potential (epsp) is related to the maximum presynaptic potential. The

delay time is sensitive to temperature. For example, squid neuron results show delay times varying from 0.5 ms at  $20^\circ\text{C}$  to 7 ms at  $2^\circ\text{C}$ .

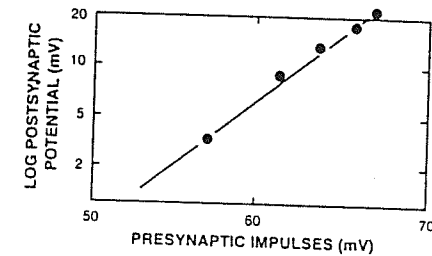


Figure 2.9 The relation between excitatory presynaptic and excitatory postsynaptic potential (epsp). (From Kuffler, et al. *From Neuron to Brain*. Adapted by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc., 1984.)

Another finding is that removing calcium or adding magnesium to the presynaptic junction reduces the neurotransmitter  $\text{ACh}$  release. Research shows that the release of neurotransmitter  $\text{ACh}^+$  is in quanta having about 1000 molecules of  $\text{ACh}^+$ . Although the quanta may vary, research shows fixed molecules per quanta. (For example, neuromuscular synapses have about 200 quanta per release.) In general, the quanta per release depends on the neuron and varies widely. Finally, at low  $\text{Ca}$  concentration, releases have only a few quanta.

The origin and targets of nerve fibers establish information and meaning because signals are similar in all nerve cells. That is, meaning has to do with the particular neural group, while frequency coding conveys information about the stimulus intensity. Thus, precise connections among selected neurons produce the wealth of information reaching us in the visual and other sensory systems.

Learning is connected to synaptic processes. Learning correlates to and is affected by synaptic efficacy, which has to do with neurotransmitter release. The efficacy is caused by changes in the quanta per release, not the molecules per quanta. Trains of impulses can lead to a continuing rise in the response. The rise, called *facilitation*, is caused by increases in the quanta released by the presynaptic terminal. Figure 2.10 shows facilitation graphically. Presynaptic inhibition, on the other hand, reduces the quanta released from the affected terminal.

Learning also affects the shape of the synapses. The presynaptic cavities change from a triangular cross section to a rounded cross section. Research shows that the cross-section change is permanent.

Moreover, learning affects the number of synapses on the neurons, especially during the early years of life. In the developing brain, the synapses to each neuron grow to a maximum at about age two in human beings. Between ages two and seven the number of synapses reduces about one-half. The drop is during the intense learning of basic skills. After age seven, the neuron population remains nearly constant until shortly before death.

Many studies show relationships between talent and neuron structure. In general, research shows more dendrites associated with talent. For example, an expert pianist has a more complex dendritic structure in the motor system than the average person.

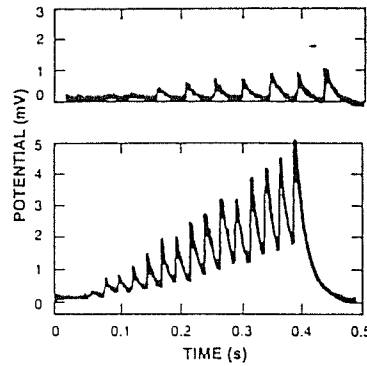


Figure 2.10 Facilitation caused by increased quanta release. Changes in synaptic efficacy are usually caused by changes in quanta content of neurotransmitters. The progressive increase in transmitter release is believed related to increases in calcium in the presynaptic terminal. (From Kuffler, et al. *From Neuron to Brain*. Reprinted by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc., 1984.)

Other nonneural structures also play a part in overall functioning. For example, measurements show that samples of the frontal lobe of Einstein's brain had more glial cells per neuron than average. (The glial cells are support cells of the brain and greatly outnumber neurons.)

In summary, the traditional view of neural functioning provides a basis for the standard NN model, presented next. The standard model gives powerful insights into human brain-mind thought processes, shown in later chapters. Section 2.4 summarizes recent findings not yet in the standard model.

## 2.2 NEURON STATE EQUATIONS

Early NN researchers formulated equations describing biological nervous systems primarily from the emergent behavior of interconnected elementary units (neurons) rather than from detailed modeling of neural mechanisms, such as the Hodgkin-Huxley system [47]. Although it is well known that a neuron transmits voltage spikes along its axon, many studies show that the effects on the receiving neurons can be usefully summarized by voltage potentials in the neuron interior that vary slowly and continuously during the time scale of a single spike. That is, the time scale of the interior neuron potential is long compared to the spike duration. The standard NN equations reflect this viewpoint.

Assume a neuron interacting with other neurons and outside stimuli, shown in figure 2.11. Denoting the  $i$ th neuron by  $v_i$ , the model starts by defining two variables,  $x_i$  and  $Z_{ij}$ , which describe the neuron's state.

One state variable of  $v_i$  is  $x_i$ , where

$$x_i(t) = \text{activation level of the } i\text{th neuron.}$$

Or (physiological view),

$$x_i(t) = \text{deviation of neuron potential from equilibrium [volts].}$$

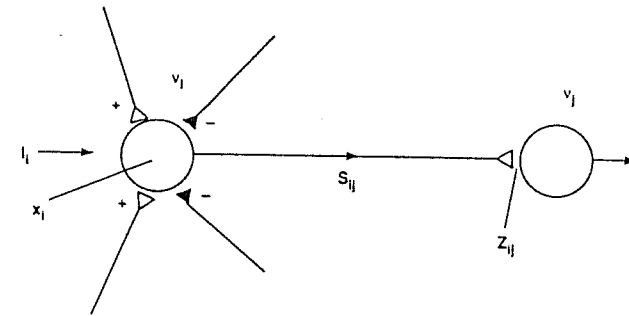


Figure 2.11 Schematic diagram of a neuron and a neural network. (a) Neuron  $v_i$ , with potential,  $x_i$  relative to equilibrium, sends a signal,  $S_{ij}$ , along the axon to a target neuron,  $v_j$ . The signal affects the target neuron with a coupling strength,  $Z_{ij}$ . The signal may be excitatory ( $Z_{ij} > 0$ ) or inhibitory ( $Z_{ij} < 0$ ). Other inputs,  $I_i$ , to the neuron model external stimuli. (b) Interconnections of many neurons form a neural network, which approximates the signal processing of biological nervous systems.

Or (psychological view),

$$x_i(t) = \text{short-term memory (STM) trace.}$$

The second state variable,  $Z_{ij}$ , is associated with  $v_i$ 's interaction with  $v_j$  (another neuron), where

$$Z_{ij}(t) = \text{synaptic coupling coefficient.}$$

Or (physiological view),

$$Z_{ij}(t) = \text{neurotransmitter average release rate per unit axon signal frequency [volts/sec/Hz = volts].}$$

Or (psychological view),

$$Z_{ij}(t) = \text{long-term memory (LTM) trace.}$$

Four models for the STM and LTM traces are

1. Additive STM equation
2. Passive decay LTM equation
3. Shunting STM equation
4. Extended LTM equation

In practice, the model selected depends on the application.

1. Additive STM equation. To formulate a set of ordinary differential equations for  $x_i(t)$  and  $Z_{ij}(t)$ , assume a change in neuron potential from equilibrium ( $-70$  mV). In general the change is caused by internal and external processes.

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = \left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{internal}} + \left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{external}}, \forall i. \quad (2.1)$$

Assume inputs from other neurons and stimuli are additive (agrees with many experiments).

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = \left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{internal}} + \left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{excitatory}} - \left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{inhibitory}} + \left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{stimuli}}, \forall i. \quad (2.2)$$

Assume the internal neuron processes are stable.

$$\left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{internal}} = -A_i(x_i)x_i, \quad A_i(x_i) > 0, \forall i. \quad (2.3)$$

Assume additive synaptic excitation proportional to the pulse train frequency.

$$\left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{excitatory}} \propto \sum_{\substack{\text{other} \\ \text{neurons}}} (\text{average axon frequency}) (\text{synaptic coupling coefficient}). \quad (2.4)$$

Or,

$$\left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{excitatory}} = \sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq i}}^n S_{ki} Z_{ki}, \forall i. \quad (2.5)$$

The phrase " $Z_{ki}$  gates  $S_{ki}$ " describes the term  $S_{ki} Z_{ki}$ , where  $S_{ki}$  = frequency of signal in the  $v_k \rightarrow v_i$  axon evaluated at  $v_i$ .

In general,  $S_{ki}$ , called the signal function, depends on the propagation time delay from  $v_k$  to  $v_i$  ( $\tau_{ki}$ ) and the threshold for firing of  $v_k$  ( $\Gamma_k$ ). Formally,

$$S_{ki}(t) = S_{ki}[x_k(t - \tau_{ki}) - \Gamma_k] \geq 0. \quad (2.6)$$

$S_{ki}$  is referred to in two ways depending on the situation:

$$S_{ki} = \begin{cases} \text{Sampling signal when considered input, or} \\ \text{Performance signal when considered output.} \end{cases}$$

Figure 2.12 shows the following three common signal functions:  
Piecewise linear signal function,

$$S_{ki}(t) = b_{ki} f[x_k(t - \tau_{ki}) - \Gamma_{ki}]^+, \quad (2.7)$$

where

$$[x_i]^+ = \max\{0, x_i\}. \quad (2.8)$$

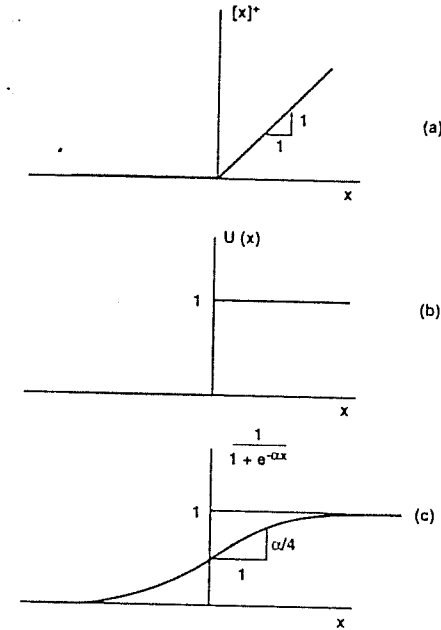


Figure 2.12 Common neural network signal functions. (a) A piecewise linear function models the nonlinear off-on characteristic of neurons. (b) A step function gives the abrupt off-on characteristic and a maximum output. (c) A sigmoid function models the off-on, nonlinear, smooth, and bounded characteristics. The abruptness is set by the slope near zero. Other signal functions are possible.

Step function signal function,

$$S_{ki}(t) = U[x_i] = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x_i < 0 \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (2.9)$$

Sigmoid function signal function,

$$S_{ki}(t) = b_{ki} f[x_k(t - \tau_{ki}) - \Gamma_{ki}], \quad b_{ki} \geq 0, \quad (2.10)$$

where, for example,

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-ax}}. \quad (2.11)$$

Other signal functions are also possible. Moreover, many global NN properties are only weakly dependent on the particular signal function. Some NN properties, however, are dependent on the signal function (see section 4.1).

Assume hardwiring of the inhibitory inputs from other neurons, that is, their coupling strength, or effectiveness, is constant. Then,

$$\left(\frac{dx_i}{dt}\right)_{\text{inhibitory}} = \sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq i}}^n C_{ki}, \quad C_{ki} \geq 0, \forall i, \quad (2.12)$$

where

$$C_{ki}(t) = c_{ki}g[x_k(t - \tau_{ki}) - \Gamma_k], \quad c_{ki} \geq 0 \quad (2.13)$$

and  $g[\ ]$  is a sigmoid or a piecewise linear function.

2. Passive decay LTM equation. Assume the excitatory coupling strength varies with time. A common model is

$$\frac{dZ_{ij}}{dt} = -B_{ij}(Z_{ij})Z_{ij} + S'_{ij}[x_j]^+, \quad \forall i, j. \quad (2.14)$$

$S'_{ij}$  is like  $S_{ij}$ , but it may differ in presynaptic dependency on  $x_j$ . Assume

$$S'_{ki}(t) = b'_{ki}f[x_k(t - \tau_{ki}) - \Gamma_k]^+, \quad \forall k, i. \quad (2.15)$$

The term  $S'_{ij}[x_j]^+$  in (2.14) shows that to increase  $Z_{ij}$ ,  $v_i$  must send a signal  $S'_{ij}$  to  $v_j$  and at the same time  $v_j$  be activated ( $x_j > 0$ ).

Note that the STM and LTM equations are not solvable until specifying a set of coefficients,  $A_i, S_{ki}, C_{ki}, B_{ij}, S'_{ij}$ , and until giving the external stimuli  $I_i(t)$ .

3. Shunting STM equation. The shunting STM equation is a better model of the neuron physics than the additive STM equation; however, it is more complex. Consider an equivalent electrical circuit for the membrane, shown in figure 2.13. The equation for this circuit is

$$C \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = (V^+ - V)g^+ + (V^- - V)g^- + (V^P - V)g^P, \quad (2.16)$$

where figure 2.13 defines  $V(t), V^+, V^-,$  and  $V^P$ . Assume

$$\left. \begin{aligned} V^- &\leq V(t) \leq V^+ \\ V^- &\leq V^P < V^+ \\ V^- - V^P &\ll V^+ - V^P \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2.17)$$

The circuit relaxes from an initial value to a final value depending on the three right-hand terms in (2.16).

For example, first assume  $V(0) = V^P$ . Then, for  $g^+, g^P = 0$ , the system goes from  $V^P$  to  $V^+$ . Second, for  $g^+, g^P = 0$ , it then relaxes from  $V^+$  to  $V^-$ . Third, for  $g^+, g^- = 0$ , it relaxes from  $V^-$  to  $V^P$  (equilibrium).

The membrane equation approximates the action potential in an axon, shown in figure 2.14.

The shunting STM equation starts by defining the following variables. Let

$$\left. \begin{aligned} V(t) &= x_i \\ V^+ &= B_i \\ V^- &= -D_i \\ V^P &= 0 \\ g^+ &= I_i + \sum_{k \neq i} S_{ki} Z_{ki}^{(+)} \\ g^- &= J_i + \sum_{l \neq i} S_{li} Z_{li}^{(-)} \\ g^P &= A \\ C &= 1 \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2.18)$$

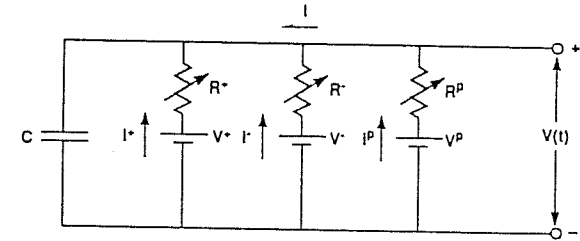


Figure 2.13 Circuit analogy for a neuron membrane.  $V^+, V^-, V^P$  are the maximum, minimum, and equilibrium voltages, respectively, inside a neuron. The voltages act like batteries in an electrical circuit. They produce a fluctuating output voltage,  $V(t)$ , representing the action potential inside the neuron. The membrane model leads to the shunting STM equation.

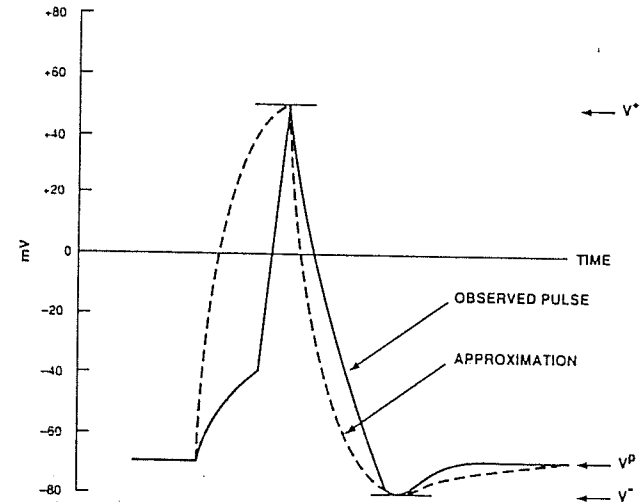


Figure 2.14 Action potential and its approximation. Proper selection of the circuit parameters (see figure 2.13),  $C, R^+, R^-, R^P$ , gives a pulse shape that approximates a biological neuron pulse.

Substituting (2.18) in (2.16) gives the shunting STM equation,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}_i &= -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i) \left[ \sum_{k \neq i} S_{ki} Z_{ki}^{(+)} + I_i \right] \\ &\quad - (x_i + D_i) \left[ \sum_{l \neq i} S_{li} Z_{li}^{(-)} + J_i \right], \quad \forall i. \end{aligned} \quad (2.19)$$

4. Extended LTM equation. The passive decay LTM equation does not explicitly model the neurotransmitter level needed for some applications. For these applications, redefine some of the variables as follows.

Let

$$Z_{ki} = \text{usable excitatory neurotransmitter level [moles],}$$

and

$$M_{ki} = \text{maximum excitatory neurotransmitter level [moles],} \\ \text{(the LTM trace in this case).}$$

Model the usable neurotransmitter level by

$$\dot{Z}_{ki} = K(M_{ki} - Z_{ki}) - CS_{ki}Z_{ki}, \quad K > C, \quad \forall i, k. \quad (2.20)$$

Model the LTM trace by

$$\dot{M}_{ki} = -\beta M_{ki} + S'_{ki}[x_i]^+, \quad \forall i, k. \quad (2.21)$$

Examination of (2.20) and (2.21) gives the following characteristics. Without signals on an axon, the neurotransmitter level,  $Z_{ki}$ , rises at rate  $K$  to a maximum level,  $M_{ki}$ , (modeling reuptake of the neurotransmitters). The second right-hand term in (2.20) shows that axon signals deplete the neurotransmitter at rate  $C$ . Experimentally  $K$  is somewhat larger than  $C$ .

Note that for long time intervals,  $x_i$  is proportional to  $Z_{ki}$ , by the STM equation. By the LTM equation,  $x_i$  is also proportional to  $M_{ki}$ . Or,  $M_{ki}$  is proportional to  $Z_{ki}$ .

Thus, the simple passive decay LTM equation corresponds to long times. To study short-term effects, however, requires using the more realistic extended three-variable LTM model.

## 2.3 NETWORK EQUATIONS

Interactions among neurons are generally nonlinear, chiefly because of the signal function. In principle, the nonlinear differential equations that describe the STM trace and LTM trace of a group of neurons can be solved. In practice, except for the simplest cases, the equations are intractable, and researchers must apply other approaches.

Using a single node to represent a pool of interacting neurons is often convenient. Figure 2.15 shows a typical situation consisting of a group of neurons and one output node. In the group,

$$\dot{x}_i = -A_i x_i + \sum_{k \neq i} S_{ki} Z_{ki} - \sum_{l \neq i, k} C_{li} + I_i, \quad \forall i, \quad (2.22)$$

and

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = -B_{ij} Z_{ij} + S'_{ij}[x_j]^+, \quad \forall i, j. \quad (2.23)$$

where the summation indices reflect the interconnections.

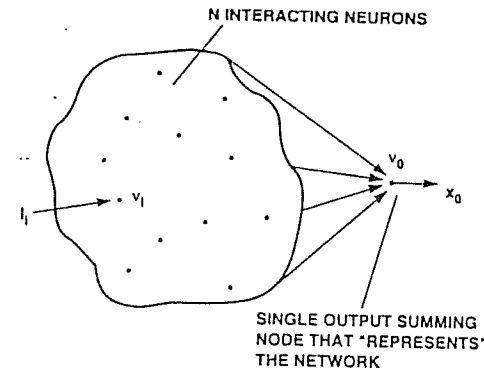


Figure 2.15 If the time scales of the input and neuron dynamics are properly chosen, a single neuron,  $v_0$ , may represent a group of neurons. In this interpretation, the activation level of  $v_0$  is proportional to the fraction of excited neurons in the group.

At the output node,

$$\dot{x}_0 = -A_0 x_0 + \sum_{i=1}^N S_{i0} Z_{i0} + I_0 \quad (2.24)$$

and

$$\dot{Z}_{i0} = -B_{i0} Z_{i0} + S'_{i0}[x_0]^+, \quad \forall i. \quad (2.25)$$

With assumptions,  $x_0$  is proportional to the number of excited neurons in the pool. For example, let

$$\left. \begin{aligned} Z_{i0} &\approx \text{constant (slowly varying), } \forall i, \\ S_{i0} &\approx s_{i0}[x_i]^+ \text{ (short delays, low thresholds, } \forall i). \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2.26)$$

Then (2.24) becomes

$$\dot{x}_0 = -A_0 x_0 + \sum_{i=1}^N s_{i0}[x_i]^+ Z_{i0} + I_0. \quad (2.27)$$

If  $A_0$  is large and the time scales for integrating inputs in (2.24) are short,  $x_0$  is proportional to the number of excited nodes in the pool as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

The preceding example leads to a formulation for groups of neurons.

Consider groups of interacting neurons  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots\}$ . Let  $x_i$  be redefined to be

$$x_i = \text{potentials of cell populations in group } v_i.$$

Assume  $v_i$  has  $B$  excitable sites, with  $x_i$  sites excited and  $B-x_i$  sites unexcited. This is a binary model, that is, the neurons are on or off.

The shunting STM equation then gives

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}_i = & -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i) \left[ \sum_{k \neq i} S_{ki} Z_{ki}^{(+)} + I_i \right] \\ & - (x_i + D_i) \left[ \sum_{l \neq i} S_{li} Z_{li}^{(-)} + J_i \right], \quad \forall i. \end{aligned} \quad (2.28)$$

Assuming certain terms negligible gives

$$\dot{x}_i = -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i) I_i - x_i \sum_{k \neq i} I_k, \quad \forall i. \quad (2.29)$$

Thus, the state equations for a single neuron have the same form as that for a group of interacting neurons. With this interpretation,  $x_i$  is the excited state in a group. For a group, however,  $A_i = A_i(x_i)$  and thus is not constant.

The two interpretations of  $x_i$ —excitation of a neuron or excited neurons in a group—may cause confusion. The application must carefully state the interpretation. The following chapters apply both interpretations.

## 2.4 RECENT NEURAL-BIOLOGY FINDINGS

Section 2.1 describes the traditional biochemical view of a prototypical neuron in the CNS. The NN models, derived in sections 2.2 and 2.3, reflect this view. Recent findings in the brain sciences, however, have altered the traditional view. Most of this new information, outlined below, remains to be incorporated into NN models. Undoubtedly, future NN models will contain some of the new findings.

To summarize for perspective, in the traditional view of a CNS neuron, particular molecules function as neurotransmitters and charge-carriers in membrane ion channels. The movement of these molecules is the mechanism for the millisecond-to-millisecond communication in the brain-mind.

The prototypical neurotransmitters are the catecholamines (CA), studied since 1905. These are 3,4 dihydroxy derivatives of phenylephamine, occurring in the brainstem nuclei and elsewhere, which enable mental functioning. Section 2.1 describes the synthesis, storage, release, receptor interaction, and action termination of neurotransmitters.

In the traditional view, starting with the pioneering work of Hebb (1949), a biology theory relates synaptic function to learning and memory. In this theory, a neuron is not a simple digital switch as envisioned by McCulloch and Pitts [66]. That is, the internal cellular environment, the local external cellular environment, and distance regulation by hormones affect synaptic functioning.

Moreover, in the traditional model, presynaptic activity causes postsynaptic receptor activity and ion fluxes, resulting in permanent changes of the synaptic structure, which in turn alter function. The structural changes are changes of the postsynaptic density (PSD), a protein layer in the synaptic gap that anchors the receptors. Changes in the PSD shape expose formerly hidden receptors and alter the electrical properties of the synapse. An

example is the NMDA receptors of the neurotransmitter glutamate in synaptic spines of hippocampal neurons [62].

This is the traditional biochemical view of neural functioning. It gives the most useful model for molecular-physiologic-behavior interactions (see chapter 8). Nevertheless, new findings, especially in the last five years, are rapidly altering this view in significant ways.

Recent research [8] strongly suggests that the human brain-mind has a control hierarchy of modules among many levels of organization. The hierarchy is the whole brain, neural groups, neurons, synapses, molecules, and genes. A basic finding is that the CNS reacts to external stimuli at all levels of organization down to the genome in a well-defined cascade of biochemical processes.

Moreover, a stimulus alters functioning throughout this hierarchy on a millisecond time scale. That is, stimuli—such as stress—affect the rate of gene readout in brain cells on a millisecond time scale!

Another finding is that neurons commonly use more than one kind of neurotransmitter and that the kind of neurotransmitter may change over time, giving another mechanism for memory and learning. The traditional view of synapses with a single kind of neurotransmitter is being refined and extended to the view of multiple transmitters at each synapse.

Another finding is that receptors also occur on the presynaptic junction. The presynaptic receptors give a negative feedback mechanism.

The implications of these findings, for which a detailed description is beyond the scope of the text, are enormous and profound.

For example, the connectionist view that knowledge lies in the synapses is too restrictive and ignores molecular and genome processes. The functionalism view that mental activity is, in principle, possible in many media is not supported by the physical evidence. The brain-mind has no hardware-software partitioning, and basic biochemical processes intimately root cognition to the genome level. On the other hand, the extreme reductionist view that complete knowledge of the genome and the molecular physics is sufficient, ignores the cases of, say, genetically identical aquatic fleas with different nervous systems.

Thus, both genetic and molecular knowledge is necessary to understand mechanisms; by themselves they are insufficient.

Indeed, an emerging view of brain-mind functioning is that of neural dynamics across many levels of organization on a millisecond time scale, and that learning is caused by altered synaptic structures and by altered DNA readout. Current research in the life sciences is becoming focused on defining the control levels and delineating the rules of interaction among the levels.

Chapters 8 and 9 return to NN models of complex and higher cognitive processes.

## SUGGESTED REFERENCES

R. KEYNES, *Ion Channels in the Nerve-Cell Membrane*. This short article describes the generation of nerve impulses by the flow of sodium and potassium ions across the nerve membrane. The article is a good overview reference before reading Kuffler.

- S. KUFFLER, J. NICHOLLS, AND R. MARTIN, *From Neuron to Brain*. The book describes the chemistry of neuron signal production and transmission. It gives information on the action potentials, ion concentrations, and experimental techniques. Portions of chapters 4 through 12 are the closest to the text. The writing is from an experimental biology point of view.
- E. KANDEL AND J. SCHWARTZ, *Principles of Neural Science*. This book is an introductory text for students of biology, behavior, and medicine. It treats neuroanatomy extensively. The book is the most complete reference widely available and is simpler than Kuffler. The book is not mathematical.
- A. REES AND M. STERNBERG, *From Cells to Atoms*. This book is an introduction to molecular biology. The illustrated format makes the book a worthwhile introduction to molecular biology for the beginner. It is also a summary for the mature student.
- E. DUPRAW, *Cell and Molecular Biology*. The literature of molecular biology is extensive. This book is a textbook for senior undergraduates and graduate students. Chapter 3 discusses the biochemistry of energy transfer. The text material on ATP hydrolysis is from this chapter.
- J. DARNELL, H. LODISH, AND D. BALTIMORE, *Molecular Biology*. This is a formidable textbook on molecular biology at the intermediate level that can be read for background for the kind of graduate course for which the present text is designed. Chapter 15 describes the Na-K pump.
- I. BLACK, *Information in the Brain*. This little book gives a remarkably complete synthesis of neuroscience from a molecular perspective. Chapter 2 summarizes the traditional biochemical view of the synapse. Other chapters describe how the traditional view is being extended by new findings. The writing is in a straightforward and conversational style.
- D. HESTENES, *How the Brain Works... The Next Great Scientific Revolution*. This article is a summary and overview of the first truly coherent mathematical theory of learning, memory, and behavior consistent with experimental data. Written from the point of view of a theoretical physicist, the reference is highly recommended.

### EXERCISES

- Starting with the shunting STM equation, show that it simplifies to the additive STM equation.
- For the system in figure 2.16, write out the additive STM and passive decay LTM equations.

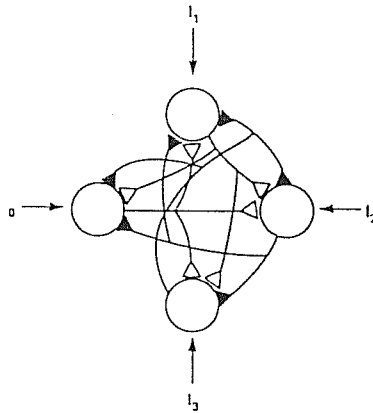


Figure 2.16 A four-neuron network for exercises 2 and 3. The open synapses are excitatory; the dark synapses are inhibitory.

- Write out the equations for exercise 2 assuming negligible delay times and zero thresholds.
- For exercise 2, assume no interactions among  $v_1$ ,  $v_2$ , and  $v_3$ . Assume  $v_0$  has only an external input  $I_0$ , that is, no inputs from the other neurons. Simplify the system of exercise 2.
- Construct neural network state equations modeling presynaptic inhibition.

## Simple Networks

Chapters 1 and 2 presented fundamentals about human brains and their prototypical neurons. Chapter 2 derived mathematical equations from these fundamentals. This chapter and the next apply these equations to derive NN modules that perform elementary functions. The chapter starts with the simplest NNs, those storing, recalling, and recognizing neuron activation patterns. In later chapters, these modules are the building blocks of complex systems.

### 3.1 OUTSTARS

The outstar is a NN for learning and recalling external inputs impressed on an array of neurons. The inputs produce a spatial pattern of neuron activations, shown in figure 3.1. The name "outstar" comes from the geometry when arranging the input neurons in a circle with the command neuron in the center. The outstar is fundamental in NN theory because it tells the kind of information encoded (reflectance patterns) and what controls the learning rate (total intensity).

Outstar functioning comes directly from the prototype neuron model. The command neuron axon connects with all input neurons. Axons of the input neurons are not considered because they do not affect outstar functioning.

To describe outstar functioning, consider inputs labeled  $\{I_i, i = 1, \dots, n\}$ , as in figure 3.1. The inputs activate the neurons. Another input,  $I_0$ , turns on the command neuron,  $v_0$ , producing axon signals to the input neurons. The external inputs and axon signals modify the LTM traces, storing the input spatial pattern in the LTM trace. After removing the inputs, the spatial pattern can be restored (recalled) across the input neurons by turning on  $v_0$ .

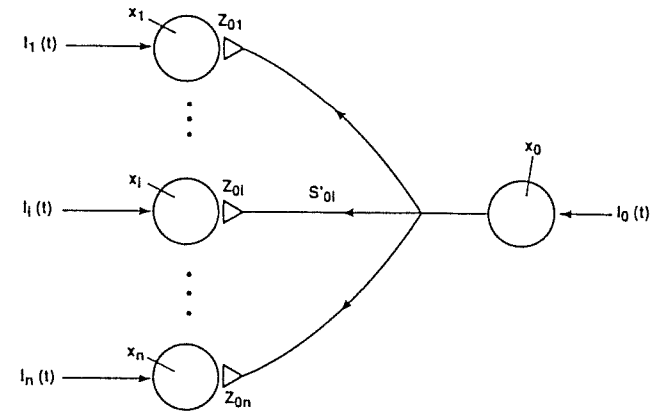


Figure 3.1 The outstar neural network. This neural network learns and recalls an input pattern. To learn, input  $I_0$  turns on the command neuron causing a learning signal to the input neurons. An input pattern, given by say, eight inputs, is learned and stored at the synapses. To recall, the command neuron reactivates the input neurons proportionally to the previously learned input. (Figure 3.2 shows more detail.)

A simple mathematical treatment of the outstar follows from the additive STM equation and the passive decay LTM equation (see chapter 2). Writing the equations for the system shown in figure 3.1, for the command neuron  $v_0$

$$\dot{x}_0 = -\alpha x_0 + I_0(t). \quad (3.1)$$

For the input neurons,

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \dot{x}_i &= -\alpha x_i + S_{0i} Z_{0i} + I_i, \quad \forall i, \\ \dot{Z}_{0i} &= -\beta Z_{0i} + S'_{0i} [x_i]^+, \quad \forall i. \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (3.2)$$

Solve the equations by making assumptions about coefficients and considering the steady-state behavior as follows. The discussion treats learning and recalling separately.

1. Learning. Assume  $I_0$  is a step function. Then, the solution to (3.1) is

$$x_0(t) = x_0(0)e^{-\alpha t} + I_0 \int_0^t e^{-\alpha(t-\tau)} d\tau. \quad (3.3)$$

Integration gives

$$x_0(t) = x_0(0)e^{-\alpha t} + \frac{I_0}{\alpha}(1 - e^{-\alpha t}).$$

$x_0(t)$  asymptotically goes to  $I_0/\alpha$  with time constant  $1/\alpha$ , that is,

$$x_0(t) \approx \frac{I_0}{\alpha}, \quad \alpha t \gg 1. \quad (3.4)$$



Equation (3.2) describes the input neurons of the system. The steady-state solution to (3.2), with no signals from  $v_0$  ( $S_0 = 0$ ), is

$$x_i(t) \approx \int_0^t e^{-\alpha(t-\tau)} I_i(\tau) d\tau.$$

Assume  $I_i(t)$  varies slowly compared with  $\alpha$ . Then,

$$x_i(t) \approx \frac{I_i(t)}{\alpha}, \quad \alpha t \gg 1. \quad (3.5)$$

Write the inputs,  $\{I_i, i = 1, \dots, n\}$  in the following convenient form:

$$I_i(t) = \theta_i I(t), \quad \forall i, \quad (3.6)$$

where  $I(t)$  is the total intensity of the inputs ( $I = \sum I_i$ ), and  $\theta_i$  is a reflectance coefficient (with  $\sum \theta_i = 1$ ).

Note that the total intensity,  $I(t)$ , may vary with time while the relative magnitudes,  $\{\theta_i\}$ , are fixed. Thus, the reflectance coefficients define a spatial pattern.

By (3.5) and (3.6), the steady-state response, expressed as reflectance coefficients, is

$$x_i(t) = \frac{\theta_i I(t)}{\alpha}, \quad \alpha t \gg 1, \quad \forall i. \quad (3.7)$$

Consider the LTM trace. Assume at  $t = t_1$  the command neuron,  $v_0$ , sends a signal  $S_{0i}$  down the axon. Then, (3.2) and (3.7) give

$$Z_{0i}(t) \propto \int_{t_1}^t e^{-\beta(t-\tau)} \frac{\theta_i}{\alpha} I(\tau) d\tau, \quad \forall i.$$

Or,

$$Z_{0i} = N(t)\theta_i, \quad \forall i, \quad (3.8)$$

where  $N(t)$  comes from the general solution of (3.2). Thus, the steady-state LTM trace is proportional to the input spatial pattern.

For example, to find  $N(t)$ , assume  $S_{0i}(t)$  and  $I(t)$  vary slowly compared with  $e^{-\beta(t-\tau)}$ . Then, the steady-state form of  $N(t)$  is

$$N(t) \approx \frac{S_{0i}(t)I(t)}{\alpha\beta}, \quad \forall i. \quad (3.9)$$

Note that for learning, a large  $I(t)$  is equivalent to a short-time constant. That is, stronger signals cause faster learning.

Figure 3.2 graphically shows outstar learning in a step-by-step sequence. First, an input pattern is applied. Second, the neurons relax with time constant  $1/\alpha$ . Third,  $I_0$  excites  $v_0$  causing a (sampling) signal to the input neurons. Fourth, the synaptic coupling relaxes with time constant  $1/\beta$ , storing the pattern. When the sampling signal is removed, the LTM trace decays, yet retains the pattern throughout.

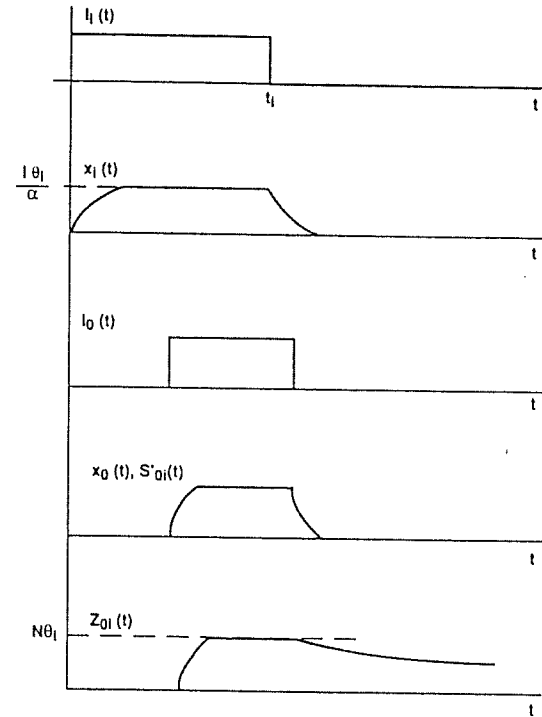


Figure 3.2 Time history of outstar learning. Input  $I_i$  is applied to the  $i$ th input neuron  $v_i$  and removed at time  $t_i$ . The activation of  $v_i$  rises to a maximum and falls after  $I_i$  is removed. An input  $I_0$  activates the command neuron  $v_0$  and produces a learning signal  $S_{0i}$  to  $v_i$ . The long-term memory trace of the input neuron  $v_i$  increases because an input signal and command signal occur together. The steady-state  $Z_i$  is proportional to  $I_i$ .

The extension of outstar learning to many patterns, applied one after the other, is as follows. Assume  $\theta_i$  changes from  $\theta_i^{(1)}$  during  $[t_1, t_2]$  to  $\theta_i^{(2)}$  during  $[t_2, t_3]$ . Then, the LTM trace goes to

$$Z_{0i}(t) \approx \int_{t_1}^{t_2} e^{-\beta(t-\tau)} S_{0i} \frac{\theta_i^{(1)}}{\alpha} I^{(1)}(\tau) d\tau + \int_{t_2}^{t_3} e^{-\beta(t-\tau)} S_{0i} \frac{\theta_i^{(2)}}{\alpha} I^{(2)}(\tau) d\tau, \quad \forall i.$$

The steady-state LTM trace has the form

$$Z_{0i}(t) = N_1\theta_i^{(1)} + N_2\theta_i^{(2)}, \quad \forall i, \quad (3.10)$$

and

$$\sum_i Z_{0i} = N_1(t) + N_2(t) = N(t). \tag{3.11}$$

Thus, the LTM trace,  $Z_{0i}$ , stores a weighted average of the sampled patterns. That is,

$$Z_{0i}(t) = N(t)\bar{\theta}_i, \forall i. \tag{3.12}$$

where  $N(t)$  and  $\bar{\theta}_i$  are generalizations of (3.10) and (3.11). This result is known as the Outstar Learning Theorem (Grossberg).

2. Recalling. Activating the command neuron,  $v_0$ , recovers the stored patterns. With no inputs, the STM equation for  $v_i$  is

$$\dot{x}_i = -\alpha x_i(t) + S_{0i}(t)Z_{0i}(t), \forall i. \tag{3.13}$$

If a (read-out) signal,  $S_{0i}$ , is sent,  $v_i$  relaxes to

$$x_i(t) = \frac{S_{0i}}{\alpha} N(t)\bar{\theta}_i, \forall i. \tag{3.14}$$

That is,  $x_i \propto I(t)\bar{\theta}_i$  regardless of the initial state. Thus, a readout signal restores (recalls) the spatial pattern on the input neurons.

Outstar learning and recalling, though simple, give insights into how neuron systems function. The results suggest that the information encoded in the LTM trace is spatial neuron activation patterns. Moreover, a NN factors a spatial pattern into a reflectance pattern while the total intensity controls the learning rate. Indeed, forgetting is not merely passive decay of LTM traces. Forgetting is interference of initial patterns by new patterns.

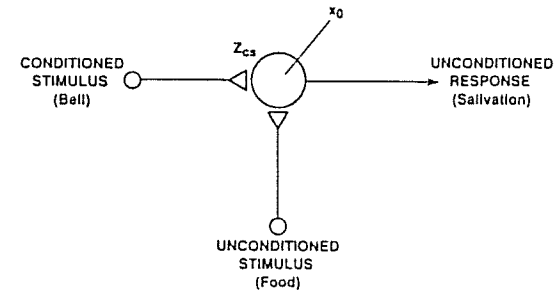
The outstar is the simplest model of learning in the central nervous system (CNS). As seen later, more complex NNs, like perceptrons and ARTs, are collections of outstars.

Applying the outstar results gives a simple explanation of Hebb's law and the Pavlov's dog result of classical psychology. Hebb's law (1949) states that a neuron repeatedly contributing to firing another neuron will have increased capability to do so. In NN theory, the LTM model (3.2) contains Hebb's law because if  $x_0$  is ON,  $Z_{CS}$  increases. Consider the form

$$\dot{Z}_{CS} = -\beta Z_{CS} + S'[x_0]^+,$$

where the notation is from figure 3.3.

Hebb's law has to do with Pavlov's dog result. A simple model for Pavlov's dog is a single neuron,  $v_0$ , representing a system. The neuron can be turned on by an UCS (unconditioned stimulus, or food), producing a response (salivation). If  $v_0$  is fired by the UCS,  $x_0 > 0$ . If  $v_{CS}$ , the CS (conditioned stimulus, or bell), is also fired when  $v_0$  is fired,  $Z_{CS}$  increases with time according to the LTM equation. Eventually,  $Z_{CS}$  is large enough so that the CS alone can fire  $v_0$  producing the response. Thus, the dog is trained to salivate when a bell is rung, a behavior traceable to properties of neurons.



**Figure 3.3** A simple neural network simulating Hebbian learning. Hebb's law (1949) is that a neuron that repeatedly contributes to firing another neuron will have increasing capability to do so. An unconditioned stimulus (UCS) alone produces an unconditioned response (UCR). If a conditioned stimulus (CS) occurs at the same time as the UCS,  $Z_{CS}$  increases and eventually produces the UCR without the UCS. The property follows from the prototypical neuron model discussed in the text.

In summary, the outstar NN gives a powerful and elegant module for designing complex processing systems, including modeling parts of the human brain-mind. This NN is a universal learning device, and different interpretations identify the kinds of learning.

For example, top-down expectancy learning occurs when the LTM pattern is played back to represent the expected input of a current event. Second, motor learning occurs when each input neuron excites a muscle group and the command neuron learns to control a particular movement. Third, temporal learning occurs when the inputs represent sequences of items on a list, such as a phone number. Later chapters develop these and other interpretations.

### 3.2 AVALANCHES

An avalanche is a NN for learning and recalling space-time patterns. As seen later, this NN is a collection of sequentially activated outstars. Although something of an idealization because practical space-time pattern learning is more complex, the avalanche concept is quite useful and deserves exposition.

Figure 3.4 shows that a space-time pattern on an array of, say, sensory neurons, is a set of time-varying spatial patterns. At a discrete sampling time,  $t_k$ , a set of reflectance coefficients  $\{\theta_i(k), i = 1, \dots, n\}$ , represents a spatial pattern in the form

$$I_i(t_k) = \theta_i(t_k)I(t_k), \forall i, k.$$

An avalanche with a single command neuron, shown in figure 3.5, samples input patterns by time delays on the axon. As described in the preceding section, the inputs cause responses that quickly relax to a steady state. A sampling signal propagates and reaches

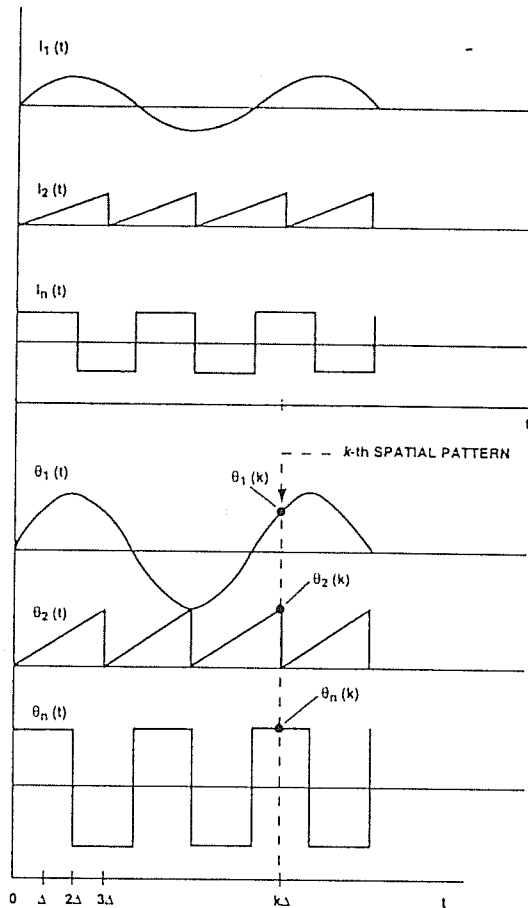


Figure 3.4 Nomenclature for a time-varying input pattern to a group of neurons. Neurons  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$  have inputs  $I_1(t), I_2(t), \dots, I_n(t)$ , respectively. Each input is scaled and represented by a reflectance coefficient  $\theta_1(t), \theta_2(t), \dots, \theta_n(t)$ , respectively. Sampling the inputs at times  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_k$  gives a set of reflectance coefficients  $\{\theta_i(t), i = 1, \dots, n\}$  for each time.

the first set of synapses at time  $t_1$ , learning the pattern. At a later time,  $t_1 + \Delta$ , the sampling signal reaches a second set of synapses, learning a different pattern. The process continues through the sampling interval. In this way, the NN learns a time-varying spatial pattern at discrete times.

The number of input neurons fixes the spatial resolution. The number of time intervals fixes its temporal resolution. Thus, an avalanche can learn a space-time pattern to an arbitrary degree of accuracy.

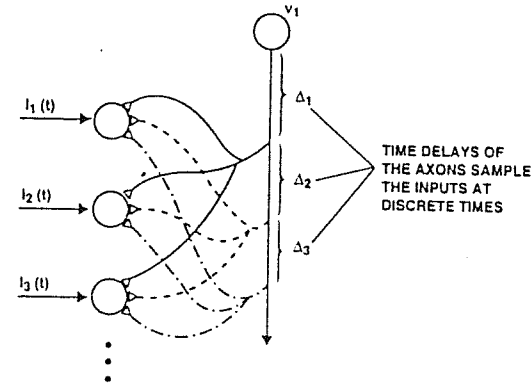


Figure 3.5 An avalanche neural network with a single command cell. An avalanche neural network can learn a time-varying input pattern. Time delays on the command axon sample the input at selected times and store it on discrete synapse sets, with each set acting as an outstar. Thus, a single command neuron successively activates the outstars.

Sending a read-out signal from the command neuron recalls a complete space-time pattern without interruption. The read-out produces a STM pattern across the input neurons proportional to the original pattern.

Variations of avalanche architectures are readily constructed. Figure 3.6 shows an avalanche with many command neurons controlled by a single higher-level command neuron. This NN has a command neuron for each pattern.

Avalanches of avalanches allow for interrupting the learning and recalling. These NNs introduce inhibitory signals to the command cells. The operation of these NNs, however, follows directly without new insights and thus are not discussed.

Estimate the memory capacity of neuron group organized as avalanches. Assume  $N_s$  (sensor) neurons in the input layer. Assume each input pattern has a command neuron. Then, the number of neurons is  $N_s + N_c$ , where  $N_c$  is the number of patterns memorized.

Using avalanches, the memory capacity gives neuron populations consistent with the human brain.

For example, assume most of the patterns we learn have to do with vision (normally the dominant sense organ). About  $10^6$  ( $1000 \times 1000$ ) pixels are in each pattern impressed on the visual cortex. So,  $N_s = 10^6$ . For an upper bound, assume we memorize one pattern a second for 100 years. The number of seconds is about  $3.15 \times 10^9$ . So,  $N_c = 3.15 \times 10^9$ . Thus, the number of neurons in an avalanche capable for the task is less than  $3.2 \times 10^9$ . The number of neurons in the human brain is at least  $10^{12}$ . Thus, the avalanche model is consistent.

Unquestionably, however, the structures for human memory are more complex than suggested above. These are estimates to be taken figuratively because the above model assumes large fan-outs and playback is uninterrupted once started. Nevertheless, the argument suggests the avalanche model is consistent with the massive storage capacity of biological systems.

Having described a class of elementary NNs capable of spatiotemporal pattern learning, we will modify such NNs according to the application in later chapters.

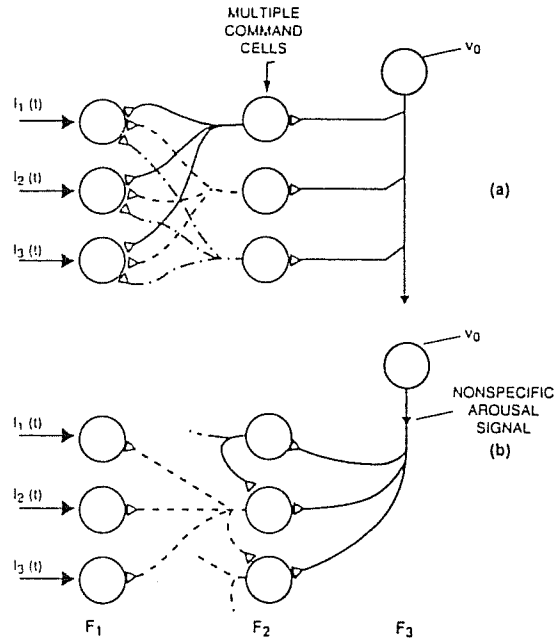


Figure 3.6 Avalanches with several command cells controlled by a single cell. (a) A single command neuron  $v_0$  controls other neurons that in turn sequentially activate outstars for sampling and storing a time-varying input pattern. Thus, different command neurons can sample the same outstar. (b) A single command neuron  $v_0$  in layer  $F_3$  prepares a neural network for activation by a learning signal. The learning signal activates neurons in layer  $F_2$  sequentially by lateral signals. These neurons in turn activate outstars in layer  $F_1$ . Thus, a general arousal stimulus caused by a context prepares the outstars for learning.

### 3.3 INSTARS

An *instar* is a NN for recognizing spatial patterns. As with outstars, the name comes from the geometry, shown in figure 3.7.

The mathematics of instars is like that of outstars. The differential equations for the input neurons are

$$\dot{x}_i = -Ax_i + I_i(t), \quad \forall i, \quad (3.15)$$

and for the output neuron,

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \dot{x}_k &= -Ax_k + \sum_i S_{ik} Z_{ik}, \quad \forall i, k, \\ \dot{Z}_{ik} &= -BZ_{ik} + S_{ik}[x_k]^+, \quad \forall i, k. \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (3.16)$$

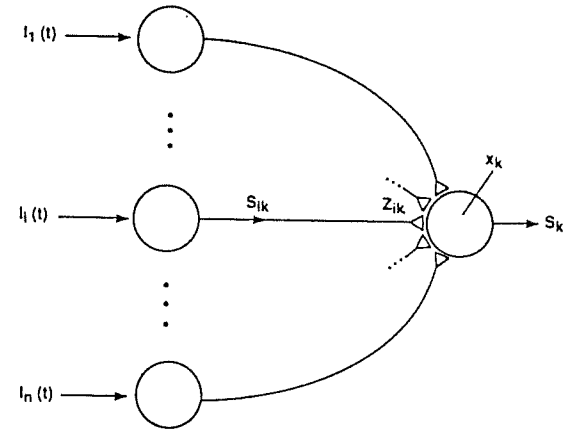


Figure 3.7 The instar neural network. This neural network learns and recognizes an input pattern. To learn, an input pattern is applied, causing signals to the center neuron. Activating the center neuron causes the long-term memory trace to go to a steady state proportional to the inputs. To recognize, another input turns on the center neuron if it is like the long-term memory trace. (Figure 3.8 shows more detail.)

To solve the differential equations, make assumptions about the coefficients and consider the steady state. As in the outstar, treat learning and recognizing separately.

1. Learning. Let reflectance coefficients represent the input pattern. That is,

$$I_i(t) = \theta_i I(t), \quad \forall i. \quad (3.17)$$

Then, the steady-state STM of the input neurons is proportional to the reflectance coefficients, or

$$x_i \propto \theta_i, \quad \forall i.$$

Activating the input neurons produces axon signals of the form

$$S_{ik}(t) = s_{ik} f[x_i(t - \tau_{i,k}) - \Gamma_i], \quad \forall i, k.$$

After relaxation ( $t \gg 1/A$ ), the signals are proportional to the input pattern. Assuming  $x_i > \Gamma_i$ ,

$$S_{ik} \propto x_i \propto \theta_i, \quad \forall i, k.$$

Let

$$S_{ik} = \mu \theta_i, \quad \forall i, k, \quad (3.18)$$

where  $\mu$  is a proportionality constant.

For convenience, write the LTM equations in (3.16) in matrix notation. Let,

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{Z}_{1k} \\ \vdots \\ \dot{Z}_{nk} \end{bmatrix} = -B \begin{bmatrix} Z_{1k} \\ \vdots \\ Z_{nk} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} S_{1k} \\ \vdots \\ S_{nk} \end{bmatrix} [x_k]^+, \forall k. \quad (3.19)$$

By (3.18),

$$\dot{Z}_k = -BZ_k + \mu\theta[x_k]^+, \forall k, \quad (3.20)$$

where  $\theta$  is the vector of reflectance coefficients.

As  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $Z_k$  relaxes to

$$Z_k(t) = \frac{\mu[x_k]^+}{B} N(t)\theta, \forall i, k. \quad (3.21)$$

Or, if  $x_k > 0$ ,

$$Z_k \propto \theta, \forall k. \quad (3.22)$$

In words, the steady-state LTM vector is proportional to the input pattern expressed as a reflectance coefficient vector. That is, the NN learns the pattern and stores it in the LTM trace, as in outstar training.

When the instar learns more than one input pattern, the vector,  $Z_k$ , asymptotically aligns itself with a weighted average of the reflectance vectors. This result is known as the instar code development theorem, proved by repeatedly solving (3.15) and (3.16) over discrete time intervals.

Thus, the LTM trace for  $M$  input patterns is

$$Z_k \propto f_1\theta_1 + f_2\theta_2 + \dots + f_M\theta_M, \forall k, \quad (3.23)$$

where  $f_i$  = fraction of time  $\theta_i$  is present.

2. Recognition. Instar recognition is by comparing an input pattern to the stored LTM vector. Assume a new input pattern,  $P$ . The STM of an output neuron is

$$\dot{x}_k = -Ax_k + \sum_i S_{ik} Z_{ik}, \forall k.$$

where  $S_{ik}$  is proportional to the input pattern and  $Z_{ik}$  is proportional to the stored pattern (Note:  $S_{ik} Z_{ik}$  can be written as a matrix dot product of  $Z_k$  and  $\theta_k$ .)

Then, the input pattern,  $P$ , belongs to the pattern class represented by  $Z_k$  if it causes the output neuron to exceed threshold. As shown in figure 3.8, the output neuron fires if  $x_k > \tau_k$ , thus "recognizing the pattern."

In summary, instar and outstar NNs are dual to one another. When drawn in their symmetric forms, they differ only in the signal direction.

An outstar can recall but cannot recognize a pattern, while an instar can recognize but cannot recall. That is, the outstar is blind; the instar is dumb.

These two elementary NNs offer a general architecture for solving many signal processing problems. Later chapters give examples.

Sec. 3.4 Multiple Instars

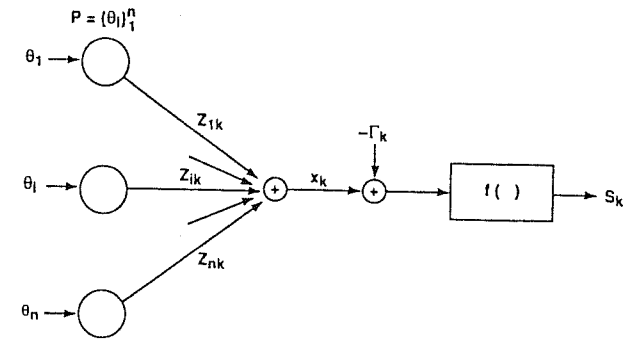


Figure 3.8 Recognition of a pattern by an instar neural network. An unknown input pattern is applied to an instar. The inputs cause signal  $S_k$  along the axon to a center neuron. The signal is multiplied by the long-term memory, summed, and compared with a threshold. If the center neuron fires, the input pattern is recognized as belonging to the pattern class represented by the long-term memory trace.

3.4 MULTIPLE INSTARS

Multiple instars can classify spatial input patterns. For example, figure 3.9 shows three instars that can classify a pattern to one of three classes. Each instar works as described in the preceding section. Select the thresholds to define the output classes.

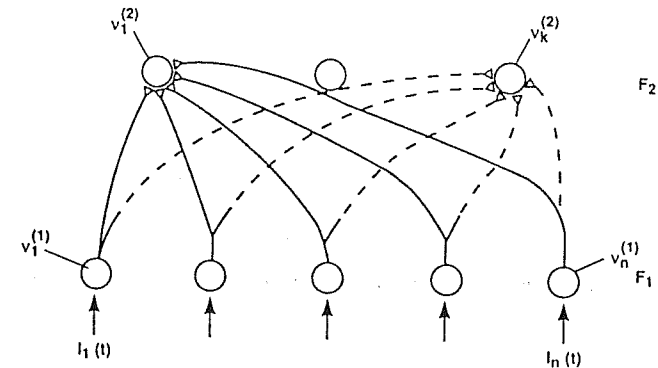


Figure 3.9 Multiple instars can classify an input pattern into one of  $k$  classes. Input neurons are in layer  $F_1$  and the center neuron of the instars are in layer  $F_2$ . The long-term memory trace of each  $F_2$  neuron represents a pattern class. When inputs are applied to  $F_1$ , one or more neurons in  $F_2$  are activated showing that the input belongs to the corresponding pattern(s).

More complex NNs are built up from instars and outstars. ARTs (see section 4.2) are multiple instars and outstars designed to recall, recognize, and compare patterns. These complex NNs also do other processing tasks. Perceptrons (see section 4.4) are multiple instars, classifying inputs according to decision regions defined by training.

### 3.5 SIMPLE LATERAL INTERACTIONS

All NNs discussed up to this point are systems with only feedforward or feedback. That is, no connections occur among neurons lying in the same layer. This section considers simple lateral connections in a layer. Connections of this kind give a NN that is sensitive to two-dimensional shapes.

Assume a layer of interacting neurons with an input pattern. The STM trace is

$$\dot{x}_i = -\alpha_i x_i + \sum_{l \neq i}^N S_{li} Z_{li} - \sum_{k \neq i, l}^N C_{ki} + I_i, \forall i. \quad (3.24)$$

Assume lateral inhibition and no lateral excitations. Then,

$$\dot{x}_i = -\alpha_i x_i - \sum_{k \neq i}^N C_{ki} + I_i, \forall i.$$

Assume piecewise linear excitation for  $C_{ki}$ . Then,

$$\dot{x}_i = -\alpha_i x_i - \sum_{k \neq i}^N c_{ki} [x_k(t - \tau_{ki}) - \Gamma_{ki}]^+ + I_i, \forall i.$$

Assume negligible delay times (neurons close together). Then,

$$\dot{x}_i = -\alpha_i x_i - \sum_{k \neq i}^N c_{ki} [x_k(t) - \Gamma_{ki}]^+ + I_i, \forall i.$$

For convenience, define the excitation,  $e_i$ , of a neuron when no inhibition is present. That is, when  $c_{ki} = 0$ . Then,

$$\dot{e}_i = -\alpha_i e_i + I_i(t), \forall i.$$

Subtracting gives

$$(\dot{x}_i - \dot{e}_i) = -\alpha_i (x_i - e_i) - \sum_{k \neq i}^N c_{ki} [x_k(t) - \Gamma_{ki}]^+, \forall i.$$

Assume a constant steady state and a constant constant. Then,

$$x_i = [e_i - \sum_{k \neq i}^N c_{ki} [x_k - \Gamma_{ki}]^+]^+, \forall i. \quad (3.25)$$

This is the Hartline-Ratliff equation. Hartline, Ratliff, and others modeled the eye response of the horse-crab Limulus by (3.25) [66].

To illustrate lateral inhibitory effects with the Hartline-Ratliff equation, consider neurons in a two-dimensional triangular pattern with symmetrical inhibitory coefficients, shown in figure 3.10. Each neuron is surrounded by six adjacent neurons. Consider illu-

minating the array with a simple dark and light pattern. Let a pattern be defined by two straight lines at an angle, shown in figure 3.11.

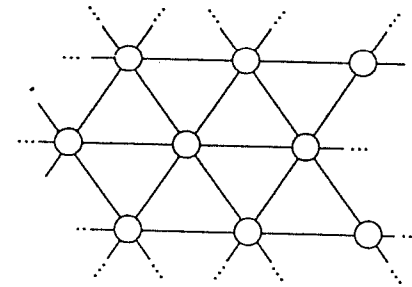


Figure 3.10 Neural network with lateral interconnections. Neurons in a layer are interconnected so that adjacent inputs affect each neuron's activation level. In a simple case, the interconnections may be symmetrical and model the eye response of the horse-crab Limulus studied by Hartline and Ratliff. (Figure 3.11 shows more detail.)

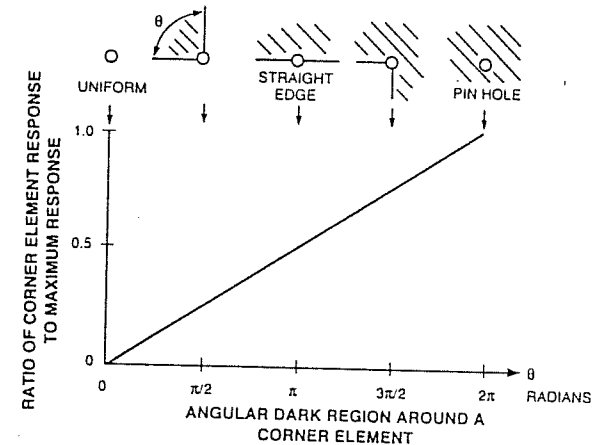


Figure 3.11 Response of a neuron that measures the angle of a corner. The eye of Limulus consists of about 1000 visual elements, called ommatidia, in an interconnected network. When an element is illuminated, it inhibits surrounding elements. The degree of inhibition measures the angle between lines in a dark-light pattern. When the element is uniformly illuminated, the response is 0, corresponding to a uniform input. When partially illuminated, the response increases and is maximum for a pinhole pattern. (Figure 3.12 shows more detail.)

By (3.25), the response of a neuron,  $x_i$ , near the corner measures the angle. That is, the neurons in the uniform dark and light have zero response while those near the edge in the light have responses that increase nearer the corner. Figure 3.11 shows that the response of a neuron near the corner as the angle defining the dark region varies from 0° to 360°.

To generalize, consider a pattern consisting of straight lines, shown in figure 3.12. The number of maxima gives the number of corners in the pattern. Moreover, because of the architecture, the number of maxima is independent of size, rotations, and translations.

Select a threshold for responses only on the corners. Thus, the architecture leads to a NN for recognizing polygons, shown in figure 3.13.

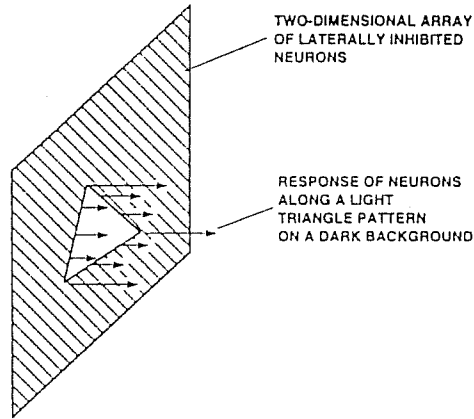


Figure 3.12 Response of neurons to a triangular shape. By laterally interconnecting neurons in a layer, the response to, say, a triangular pattern is maximum at the corners. (Figure 3.13 shows more detail.)

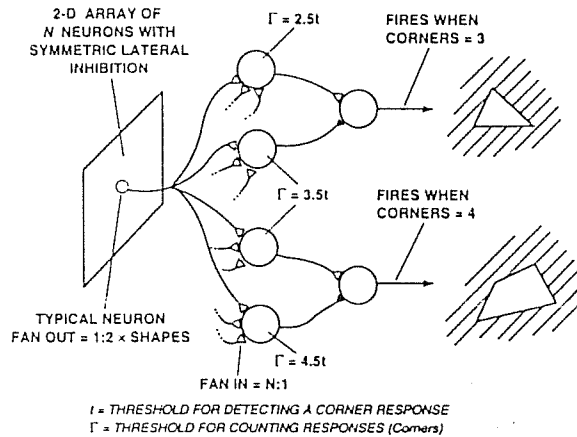


Figure 3.13 A neural network for detecting shapes regardless of size, orientation, and location. Each neuron in a neural network with lateral connects is part of an instar. By selecting the threshold, the instar can recognize geometric patterns consisting of straight lines. It follows that the number of maxima gives the number of corners in the pattern regardless of its size, location, and orientation.

The NN for recognizing light polygons on a dark background assumes convex interior angles. For sensitivity to convex and concave angles, first apply the pattern and count the number of corners. Second, reverse the image (black → white and white → black), and count the number of corners. Third, add the results to give the total number of corners.

### 3.6 ENHANCEMENT AND SELECTION

The preceding section considered the steady-state STM response. NNs with lateral inhibition can select the maximum input or enhance an input pattern. Assume a layer of interacting neurons with lateral inhibition, negligible thresholds and time delays, and unity time constant. Then, the STM response of a neuron is

$$\dot{x}_i = -x_i - \sum_k C_{ki} f[x_k] + I_i, \forall i.$$

Assume a piecewise linear sigmoid function

$$\dot{x}_i = -x_i - \sum_k C_{ki} [x_k]^+ + I_i, \forall i. \tag{3.26}$$

Assume a system of  $N$  neurons with constant inhibitory coefficients equal to  $1/N$ . Equation (3.26) goes to

$$\dot{x}_i = -x_i - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k \neq i} [x_k]^+ + I_i, \forall i. \tag{3.27}$$

To use the NN, apply the input, wait until the steady state is reached, and then remove the input. The response after removing the input is by

$$\dot{x}_i = -x_i - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k \neq i} [x_k]^+, x_i(0) = I_i, \forall i. \tag{3.28}$$

Figure 3.14 illustrates two examples of this system. As seen, relaxation selects the maximum response to a pattern (a). Moreover, during relaxation, the system enhances the pattern so that its features are exaggerated (b). Thus, the output response of the neurons can be sampled to give an enhanced version of the input or, by waiting, to give the maximum input. This NN is called the Maxnet.

### 3.7 GATED DIPOLES

A gated dipole is a NN that can work as a clock. This section applies the extended LTM equation (see chapter 2) to construct a NN as an oscillation source. Other applications of the gated dipole NN are modeling diverse kinds of learning, such as superconditioning, self-

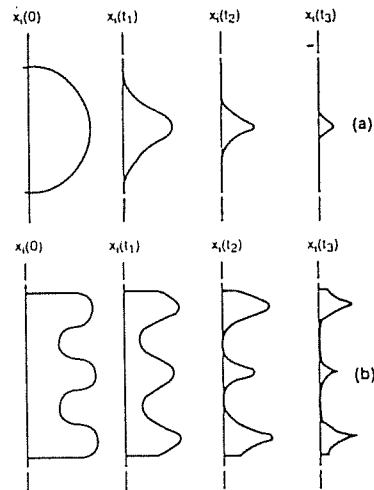


Figure 3.14 Time history of interconnected neurons. A layer of interconnected neurons responds to input activations. After reaching steady state, the pattern is removed. As the neurons relax, the lateral interconnections (a) enhance the pattern or (b) select one or more maxima of the original pattern.

stimulation, vicious circle behavior, and learned helplessness. These processes take place simultaneously on different spatial and temporal scales (for a review, see [34, chap. 5]).

Consider a neuron with a single synapse. A model of neurotransmitter depletion and uptake is

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \dot{x} &= -\alpha x + SZ, \\ \dot{Z} &= k(M - Z) - c(SZ), \\ \dot{M} &= -\beta M + S[x]^+ \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (3.29)$$

where the notation is from section 2.2.

To understand this system, assume the axon signal is a square pulse, shown in figure 3.15. The signal,  $S$ , causes a decrease in the neurotransmitter level,  $Z$ . As shown, the neuron activity increases, leading to an overshoot. As  $Z$  decreases, the activity reaches a peak and then starts to decrease.

After the axon pulse ends, the neurotransmitter level increases because of uptake. The activation level, after undershooting, then returns to equilibrium. As shown, the neurotransmitter level,  $M$ , is little changed by this single pulse because of its large time constant.

By this model, the gated dipole NN shown in figure 3.16 produces a periodic pulse train. The architecture has upper and lower branches with recirculating feedback loops. The branches are arranged so the cross-coupling cancels out common inputs.

Feedback causes oscillations. Starting with the bottom-left neuron, a trigger produces a pulse. The square pulse is modified by overshoot and undershoot. Inhibition (third neuron)

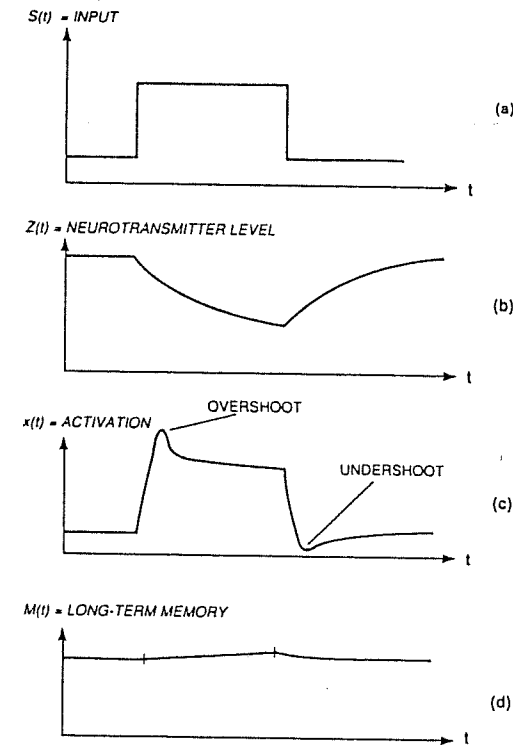


Figure 3.15 Characteristics of the extended long-term memory model. (a) A step axon signal causes (b) a decrease in the presynaptic neurotransmitter level  $Z$ . (c) The neuron activation level overshoots at first, then declines. When the signal ends, the activation rapidly decreases, undershoots, and recovers to zero. (d) The long-term memory is little affected by a single step.

cancels the constant level. The modified pulse returns by feedback to the first neuron and cycles through again. The shape is again modified, producing a sharper pulse. The upper and lower circuits produce pulses with the pulse frequency depending on the delay time. Thus, for example, a Circadian pacemaker circuit is realized [13].

In summary, the chapter discussed NNs exploiting the simplest neuron models, except for the gated dipole. Indeed, their elementary nature results in widespread utility. Viewed in the context of applications and modeling biological nervous systems, the elementary NNs are the building blocks for more complex assemblies and, eventually, systems.



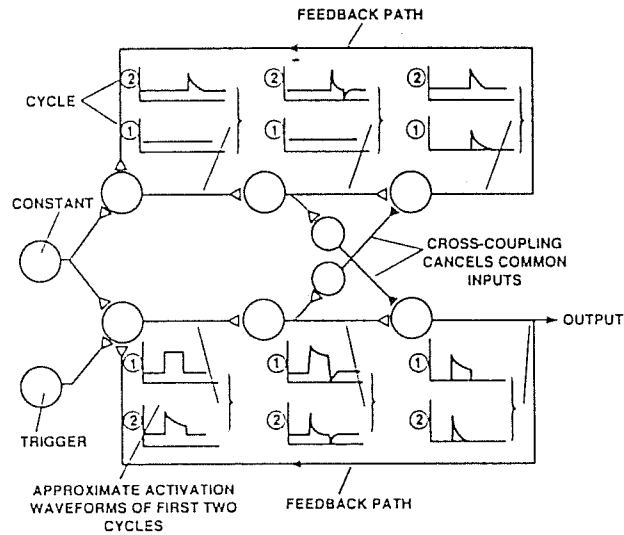


Figure 3.16 The dipole neural network. The trigger introduces a step input signal to the system leading to oscillations because of the extended long-term memory model characteristics shown in figure 3.15. Starting with the lower branch, the signal propagates along and crosses over to the upper branch. Feedback loops on the two branches cause the pulses to produce an oscillatory activation. The figure shows approximate pulse shapes for the first two cycles.

SUGGESTED REFERENCES

- S. Grossberg, *Studies of Mind and Brain*. Regrettably this text with its collection of papers is difficult to find. The papers cover Grossberg's work from 1968 to 1980. Chapter 1 is an overview of his results to 1980. Outstars are discussed in appendix B. Avalanches are discussed in chapter 3, section V. Gated dipoles are in chapter 5.
- D. Hestenes, *How the Brain Works... The Next Great Scientific Revolution*. This is a good reference for chapter 3. Although not all subjects of interest are discussed, there can be little quarrel with the handling of the material.
- Z. Melzak, *Mathematical Modeling*. Chapter 6 gives a discussion of Hartline-Ratliff equations from a mathematical viewpoint. The treatment is elementary and nonbiological.
- R. Lippmann, *Introduction to Computing with Neural Networks*. To give a single comprehensive reference to neural networks is difficult because the results are widely dispersed. This paper is deservedly well known and often quoted. The overview in the paper is especially valuable.
- G. Carpenter, *A Neural Theory of Circadian Rhythms*. After Grossberg developed the gated dipole concept, Carpenter advanced an intercellular version. This version produces the biological clock

(the Circadian pacemaker) discussed in the text. The idea of slow chemical activity for timing leads to an important NN module. For example, it enables modeling sleep and nocturnal activities. Moreover, from an applications viewpoint, a gated dipole can be the master oscillator of a system.

EXERCISES

1. Some characteristics of the human auditory system are
  - a. Frequency Range: 20–20,000 Hz
  - b. Relative discrimination of different tones: 1800 "just noticeable differences" at 60 dB
 Assume the system works by sampling the output of a bank of 1800 frequency filters. Assume the sampling rate is  $2 \times$  the maximum frequency.
  - a. Estimate the number of neurons needed to memorize Beethoven's 9th Symphony (time = 64 minutes), assuming an avalanche-type neural network.
  - b. What fan-out is needed from each command neuron to the sensor array neurons?
  - c. Sketch the avalanche structure.
2. Consider a two-input outstar shown in figure 3.17:

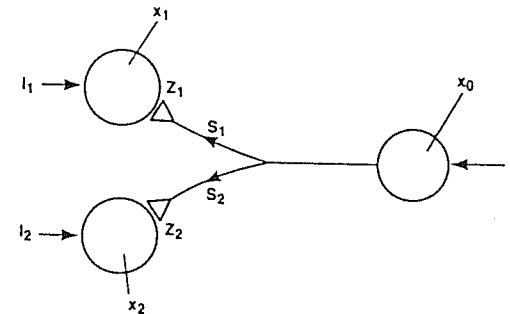


Figure 3.17 Neural network for exercise 2.

- a. Write the Additive STM and Passive Decay LTM equations for this system.
- b. Simplify the equations by assuming negligible delay times and thresholds.
- c. Assume the following inputs for  $I_1$  and  $I_2$ :

$$I_1 = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \sin \omega t & 0 \leq t < 2 \\ \frac{1}{4} \sin \omega t & 2 \leq t < 3 \\ 0, & 3 \leq t \end{cases}$$

$$I_2 = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \sin \omega t & 0 \leq t < 2 \\ \frac{3}{4} \sin \omega t & 2 \leq t < 3 \\ 0, & 3 \leq t \end{cases}$$

What is the steady-state value of the LTM trace for  $t > 3$ ?

3. Consider the following system shown in figure 3.18:

- Write the Additive STM and Passive Decay LTM equations for this system assuming negligible delay times and thresholds.
- Assume a piecewise linear function for  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ , all coefficients = unity magnitude,  $x_1, x_2 > 0$ , and  $I_1 > I_2$ . What is the steady-state value for the STM when  $I_0 = 0$ ?

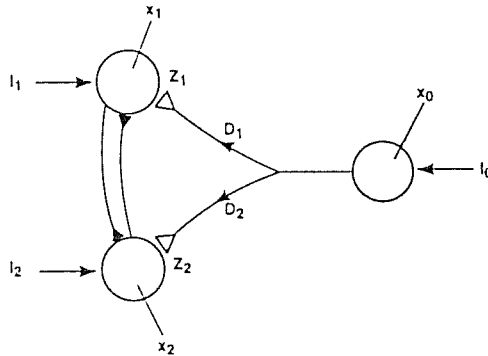


Figure 3.18 Neural network for exercise 3.

4. Consider simulating two characteristics of a *Rana Catesbeiana* (frog).

- An insect crossing the field of view (FOV) causes the tongue to catch it.
- A large shadow crossing the FOV causes the frog to jump.

These reflexes are automatic without involving higher brain centers. Using the elementary neural network modules developed to date, design a neural network implementing these characteristics.

5. Consider a shunting STM equation,

$$\dot{x}_i = -Ax_i + (B - x_i)I_i(t), \quad \forall i.$$

- Find the steady-state response.
- Given initial value  $x_i(0)$ , solve for  $x_i(t)$  for time  $t > 0$ .
- How does the rate of  $x_i(t)$  approaching its steady state depend on  $I_i$ ?

# 4

## Complex Networks

The preceding chapter derived simple NN modules and illustrated standard mathematical techniques. This chapter describes complex networks and their properties starting with a general class of NNs. The chapter discusses the major design problems, such as noise-saturation and stability-plasticity tradeoffs.

### 4.1 COOPERATIVE-COMPETITIVE SYSTEMS

Cooperative-competitive (CC) NNs are complex systems of interconnected excitatory and inhibitory neurons.

CC NNs are difficult to analyze because of the nonlinear signal function (see chapter 2). This section considers topics about CC NNs. The approach considers the simplest CC systems first and then builds up to more complex systems. Examples illustrate the mechanisms responsible for network properties.

The simple NNs of chapter 3 ignored two important issues: noise and saturation. Noise is important because many biological NNs operate near the quantum limit, for example, vision. Saturation is important because neurons have finite operating ranges. Saturation means larger signals do not cause larger responses.

A NN may need a wide dynamic range between the noise floor and a saturation limit because of wide fluctuations in signal levels.

The dynamic range issue in NN theory is called the noise-saturation dilemma, and is well known to designers of electronic circuits. The noise-saturation dilemma is as follows.

If the NN is sensitive to large inputs, how does it distinguish small inputs from internal noise? If the NN is sensitive to small inputs, how does it remain responsive to large

inputs? The following sections analyze the noise-saturation dilemma starting with simple CC systems.

1. **Interacting Neurons and Groups of NNs.** Assume the shunting STM model that models axon membrane characteristics. As shown in chapter 2, the activation is

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}_i = & -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i) \left[ \sum_j C_{ji} f(x_j) Z_{ji}^{(+)} + I_i \right] \\ & - (x_i + D_i) \left[ \sum_k E_{ki} g(x_k) Z_{ki}^{(-)} + J_i \right], \quad \forall i. \end{aligned} \quad (4.1)$$

Note that  $A_i$ ,  $B_i$ ,  $C_{ji}$ ,  $D_i$ , and  $E_{ji}$  are positive. By considering the sign of  $\dot{x}_i$ , the steady-state  $\bar{x}_i$  is between  $-D_i$  and  $B_i$ .

Equation (4.1) describes interacting neurons or interacting groups of neurons. When interpreted as interacting neurons, the coefficients are axon membrane parameters. When interpreted as interacting groups,  $B_i$  is the excitable neurons in the NN denoted by  $v_i$ . Of this number,  $x_i$  are excited and  $B_i - x_i$  are unexcited. ( $x_i < 0$  means the NN is hyperpolarized, needing excitation first to  $x_i = 0$  and then to  $x_i > 0$ .)

2. **Simplest Network with Automatic Gain Control.** Apply (4.1) to the system shown in figure 4.1. This system is an on-center/off-surround (ON CTR/OFF SUR) feedforward NN. As shown, an input to a neuron tends to turn on the neuron while tending to turn off adjacent neurons. This system has no interactions among the neurons.

Writing  $J_i = \sum_{k \neq i} I_k$ , (4.1) simplifies to

$$\dot{x}_i = -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i) I_i - (x_i + D_i) \sum_{k \neq i} I_k, \quad \forall i. \quad (4.2)$$

Rearranging the terms of (4.2) gives

$$\dot{x}_i = -A_i x_i + (B_i I_i - D_i \sum_{k \neq i} I_k) - x_i (I_i + \sum_{k \neq i} I_k), \quad \forall i.$$

Setting  $\dot{x}_i = 0$  and solving for the steady state gives

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{B_i I_i - D_i \sum_{k \neq i} I_k}{A_i + I_i + \sum_{k \neq i} I_k}, \quad \forall i. \quad (4.3)$$

Assume no lateral interactions, that is  $\sum_{k \neq i} I_k = 0$ . Then

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{B_i I_i}{A_i + I_i} \xrightarrow{I_i \rightarrow \infty} B_i. \quad (4.4)$$

For this NN, each  $x_i(t)$  saturates at  $B_i$  for large inputs, regardless of the input pattern. A system needs lateral interactions to avoid saturation.

Consider a system with lateral interaction terms. Rewrite (4.3) as

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{B_i I_i - D_i (I_i - I_i)}{A_i + I_i}, \quad \forall i, \quad (4.5)$$

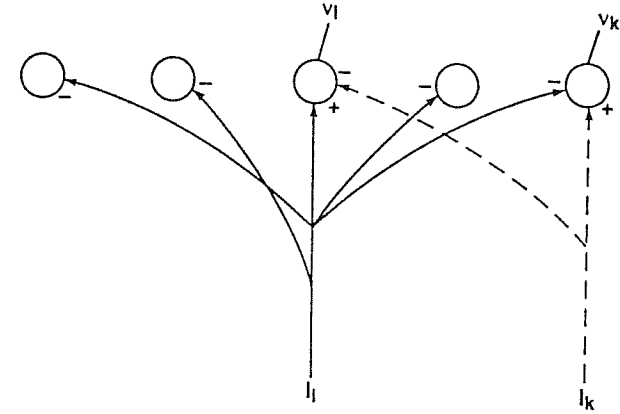


Figure 4.1 An on-center/off-surround feedforward neural network with automatic gain control. Input  $I_i$  excites neuron  $v_i$  while inhibiting the other neurons. A second input  $I_k$  excites neuron  $v_k$  and inhibits  $v_i$ . The system has automatic gain control. That is, the steady-state responses remain proportional to large inputs.

where

$$I = I_i + \sum_{k \neq i} I_k, \quad \forall i. \quad (4.6)$$

With lateral interactions, the steady state has the form

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{(B_i + D_i) I}{A_i + I} \left( \theta_i - \frac{D_i}{B_i + D_i} \right), \quad \forall i, \quad (4.7)$$

where  $\theta_i = I_i/I$  are the reflectance coefficients (see chapter 3).

The first term,  $(B_i + D_i)I/A_i + I$ , gives information about the background by  $I$ . The second term,  $(\theta_i - D_i/(B_i + D_i))$ , gives information about the pattern by  $\theta_i$ . The term  $D_i/(B_i + D_i)$  is called the adaptation level.

With lateral interactions, the steady-state response still gives pattern information for large inputs. That is,

$$\bar{x}_i \xrightarrow{I \rightarrow \infty} (B_i + D_i) \left( \theta_i - \frac{D_i}{B_i + D_i} \right), \quad \forall i. \quad (4.8)$$

Thus, in electrical engineering terminology, the system has automatic gain control.

3. **Noise Suppression.** Equation (4.7) shows  $\theta_i$  must exceed  $D_i/(B_i + D_i)$  to excite the NN. Assume  $N$  inputs,  $I_1, I_2, \dots, I_N$ . Setting the adaptation level to  $1/N$  gives

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{(B_i + D_i) I}{A_i + I} \left( \theta_i - \frac{1}{N} \right), \quad \forall i. \quad (4.9)$$

This system has noise suppression in its simplest form. That is, for a uniform (noisy) input,  $(\theta_i = 1/N)$ ,  $\bar{x}_i = 0$ ,  $\forall i$ .

4. Pattern Matching. The noise suppression brings about pattern matching in the following sense. Assume each input  $I_i$  is the sum of two inputs  $J_i$  and  $K_i$ . That is,  $I_i = J_i + K_i$ ,  $\forall i$ , corresponding to patterns  $J = (J_1, \dots, J_N)$  and  $K = (K_1, \dots, K_N)$ .

The NN compares patterns  $J$  and  $K$  as follows. If  $J$  and  $K$  are mismatched, their peaks and troughs tend to produce a uniform pattern. Thus, the neurons will be inhibited and their steady-state response tends to zero. (The next section develops this property.)

If the two patterns are matched, they reinforce each other. For perfect matching, that is,  $J_i = \alpha K_i$ , the steady-state response is

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{[B + D(1 + \alpha)\bar{K}]}{[A + (1 + \alpha)\bar{K}]} \left( \theta_i - \frac{1}{N} \right), \forall i, \quad (4.10)$$

where  $\bar{K} = \sum_i K_i$ . Thus, matching  $J$  and  $K$  amplifies the steady-state response without changing the pattern  $\theta$ .

The preceding ON CTR/OFF SUR NN explains some empirical results.

The Weber-Fechner law (W-F law) is a well-known psychophysics result found in variety of sensory phenomena. The W-F law says that over a broad range of input values

$$\frac{\Delta I}{I} = \text{constant}, \quad (4.11)$$

where  $\Delta I$  is the "just noticeable" input difference compared with a background input  $I$ . (See table 1.5 for vision, hearing, and touch thresholds in human beings.)

NN considerations can derive the W-F law. Starting with (4.7), let

$$I' = I + \Delta I.$$

Substituting gives

$$\bar{x}'_i = \frac{(B + D)(I + \Delta I)}{A + I + \Delta I} \left( \theta_i - \frac{D}{B + D} \right).$$

Assume  $A + I \gg \Delta I$ . Then,

$$\frac{\bar{x}'_i}{\bar{x}_i} = 1 + \frac{\Delta I}{I},$$

or

$$\frac{\Delta \bar{x}_i}{\bar{x}_i} = \frac{\Delta I}{I}.$$

Interpreting this result, if  $\Delta \bar{x}_i / \bar{x}_i$  is the "just noticeable" difference in the NN response,  $\Delta I / I = \text{constant}$  as observed.

Another empirical result, about brightness, can also be explained. Let  $\bar{X}$  be the total steady-state activity. That is,

$$\bar{X} = \sum_i \bar{x}_i. \quad (4.12)$$

By (4.7)

$$\bar{X} = \frac{(B + D)I}{A + I} \left( 1 - N \frac{D}{B + D} \right). \quad (4.13)$$

Thus, if  $D/(B + D) = 1/N$ ,  $\bar{X} = 0$ . That is, for a network receiving a fixed illuminance, if one part is made brighter (increasing  $\bar{x}_i$ ), the other part is darker (decreasing  $\bar{x}_i$ ). This property explains the brightness contrast illustrated in figure 4.2.

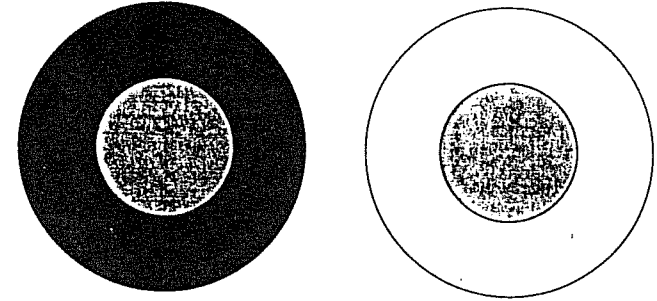


Figure 4.2 Example of brightness contrast. For an on-center/off-surround neural network with fixed input, if responses of one part increase, the responses of the remaining part decrease. To illustrate, the central area on the right looks darker than the identical central area on the left because the surround on the right is lighter than the surround on the left.

5. Noise Suppression and Contrast Improvement. Lateral interactions between inputs and responses produce other NN properties. Figure 4.3 shows a simple system with feedback. Equation (4.14) describes the system.

$$\dot{x}_i = -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i)[f(x_i) + I_i] - x_i \left[ \sum_{k \neq i} f(x_k) + J_i \right], \forall i \quad (4.14)$$

where

$$0 < \bar{x}_i < B.$$

Assume  $I_i$  and  $J_i$  act before  $t = 0$  to establish an initial activation pattern,  $x_1(0), \dots, x_N(0)$ .

After removing the inputs, the response for  $t > 0$  is

$$\dot{x}_i = -A_i x_i + (B_i - x_i)f(x_i) - x_i \sum_{k \neq i} f(x_k), \forall i. \quad (4.15)$$

The kind of the feedback signal function,  $f(\cdot)$ , affects the steady-state responses. Figure 4.4 shows the initial activation pattern at the top. The left column shows possible functions for  $f(x_i)$ , while the middle column shows the steady-state responses.

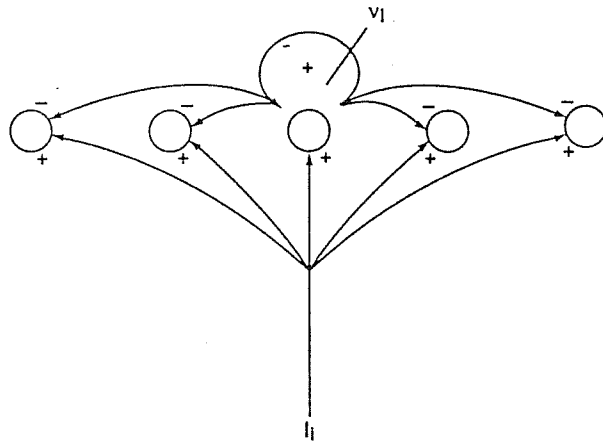


Figure 4.3 An on-center/off-surround neural network with feedback. The lateral feedback interactions among the neurons produce noise suppression and contrast enhancement.

When  $f(x_i)$  is slower than linear, noise is amplified and the response is uniform, that is, the network experiences seizure. When  $f(x_i)$  is linear, the system amplifies noise and signal equally. When  $f(x_i)$  is faster than linear, noise is suppressed and the maximum is a unique winner-takes-all.

Combining these results, noise is suppressed and the signal is amplified when  $f(x_i)$  is sigmoidal. The quenching threshold,  $QT$ , defines noise and signal. That is, signal is  $x_i \geq QT$ ; noise is  $x_i < QT$ .

For this simple system, the quenching threshold can be calculated and is

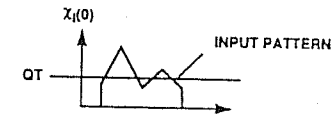
$$QT = \frac{x_l}{x_u - \frac{1}{S}} \quad (4.16)$$

where figure 4.4 defines  $x_l$ ,  $x_u$ , and  $S$ .

6. Temporal Stability and the Stability-Plasticity Dilemma. NN theory has two stability issues. First, is the temporal stability, well known from conventional systems theory. Stability in this sense has to do with the asymptotic behavior at large times.

Few general temporal stability conditions are known for the STM and LTM state equations. One well-known result is the Cohen-Grossberg theorem for STM temporal stability in the sense of Lyapunov.

Lyapunov's approach is to associate an energy function,  $V(t)$  (the Lyapunov function) with the system. If this function decreases as time increases, energy is leaving the system so the system relaxes to zero. In practice, however, finding a Lyapunov function for the system may be difficult.



SIGNAL FUNCTION $f(\cdot)$	STEADY-STATE RESPONSE $x_i(\infty)$	EFFECT ON INPUT PATTERN
		AMPLIFIES NOISE SEIZURE
		UNCHANGED
		QUENCHES NOISE WINNER-TAKE-ALL
		QUENCHES NOISE ENHANCES SIGNAL

Figure 4.4 Summary of signal enhancement and noise suppression in feedback neural networks. The steady-state response depends on the signal function. To illustrate, for the input pattern shown at the top, the signal functions in the left column produce the responses in the middle column. A signal function that is slower than linear amplifies noise, linear produces no changes, faster-than-linear quenches noise, and sigmoid enhances the signal and suppresses noise. For a sigmoid, signal is defined as being above a quenching threshold ( $QT$ ). (From Grossberg, *Nonlinear Neural Networks: Principles, Mechanisms, and Architectures in Neural Networks*, Vol. 1. Reprinted by permission of S. Grossberg, 1988).

Cohen and Grossberg [35, p. 25] assumed the system

$$\dot{x}_i = a_i x_i [b_i(x_i) - \sum_j c_{ij} d_j(x_j)], \quad \forall i, \quad (4.17)$$

which is like the STM equations. This system has a Lyapunov function if the coefficients satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} c_{ij} &= c_{ji}, \\ a_i(x_i) &\geq 0, \\ d'_j(\bar{x}_j) &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

The Lyapunov function is

$$V(t) = - \sum_i \int_{x_i}^{x_i} b_i(\xi_i) d'_i(\xi_i) d\xi_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j,k} c_{jk} d_j(x_j) d_k(x_k). \quad (4.18)$$

$V(t)$  has the following time derivative  $\dot{V}(t)$ :

$$\dot{V}(t) = - \sum_i a_i d'_i [b_i - \sum_j c_{ij} d_j]^2. \quad (4.19)$$

The time derivative is negative because of the coefficients. The Lyapunov function is positive when activation is positive. Thus,  $V(t)$  will decrease with time to zero. That is, the system is stable in the sense of Lyapunov.

Second, is the stability of stored patterns. In a NN sense, learning a pattern means associating a neuron with each pattern, for example, the control neuron in an avalanche. The system is unstable in the encoding sense if during learning these neurons toggle back and forth among patterns.

Encoding instabilities occur because learning changes the stored patterns. These instabilities can be seen from the general state equations. When a pattern is impressed on the system, the STM trace quickly reaches steady-state,  $d/dt STM = 0$ , while the LTM trace continues to change, that is,  $d/dt LTM \neq 0$ . As the LTM trace reaches steady-state,  $d/dt LTM = 0$ . Then, the STM trace becomes a function of the current input pattern and the previous inputs, setting off another cycle of STM and LTM changes.

The stability-plasticity dilemma is keeping the system responsive to new inputs while preserving the effects of past inputs, that is, not recoding the past memory. The next section discusses this dilemma further.

In summary, CC NNs exhibit many properties through lateral interactions by feedforward of inputs and feedback among neurons. These properties include gain control, noise suppression, and pattern matching. The properties are sensitive to the kind of signal function, however. General results are sparse. Indeed, to continue theory development calls for studying individual NNs, for example, the ART NNs.

#### 4.2 ADAPTIVE RESONANCE THEORY

Adaptive Resonance Theory (ART) is a class of NNs modeling behavioral and psychological phenomena. These phenomena include plasticity (coding the inputs—especially new ones), stability (not recoding noise or irrelevant inputs), and attention (quickly processing familiar inputs and resetting if unfamiliar). ART makes no constraints on the inputs, such as orthogonal or linear predictable. In practice, the ART NNs are the most powerful NNs known and so deserve extended exposition.

Researchers developed several classes of ARTs. The plan for this section is twofold: (1) to develop the basic ideas by presenting in detail ART-1 and ART-2; (2) to show examples of learning and recognizing patterns.

1. ART-1. Figure 4.5 shows the notation. To summarize, the characteristics of ART-1 are as follows.

1. ART-1 is a two-layer NN. The layers called  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  have feedforward and feedback signals between them and inhibitory interactions within  $F_2$ .  $F_1$  is the feature field;  $F_2$  is the category field.
2. ART-1 functions as a classifier or associative memory.
3. ART-1 consists of instars ( $F_1 \rightarrow F_2$ ) and outstars ( $F_2 \rightarrow F_1$ ) with contrast improvement in  $F_2$ .
4. ART-1 uses resets for sequential searches.
5. ART-1 is unsupervised, that is, the NN does not need a truth set during learning because it defines its own classification categories.
6. ART-1 resonates (defined below) when input pattern and LTMs match according to a criterion.

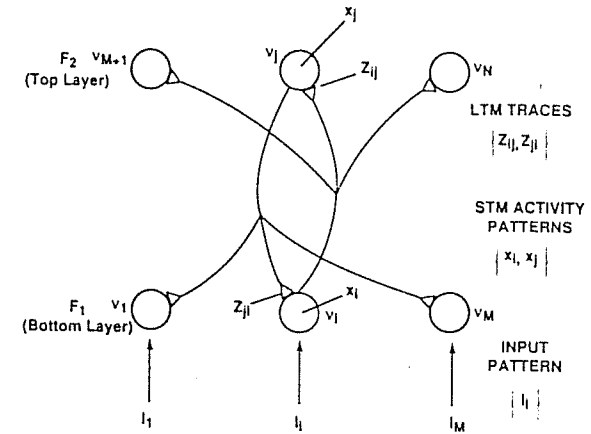


Figure 4.5 ART-1 notation. The input pattern  $I$  produces activations  $x_i$  across layer  $F_1$ , consisting of neurons  $v_1, \dots, v_M$ . The input to  $v_i$  is  $I_i$ . Neurons in  $F_1$  connect with neurons in layer  $F_2$  by long-term memory traces  $Z_{ij}(F_1 \rightarrow F_2)$  and  $Z_{ji}(F_2 \rightarrow F_1)$ .  $F_2$  consists of neurons  $v_{M+1}, \dots, v_{M+1}$  with activations  $x_j$ .

Figure 4.6 shows a flow diagram of the ART-1 algorithm. The step-by-step operation of ART-1 is as follows.

1. Present a binary input pattern across  $F_1$ . The resulting STM activity of  $F_1$  excites instar nodes on  $F_2$ . Lateral interactions in  $F_2$  pick the maximum response and suppress the others. The surviving node of  $F_2$  excites an outstar in  $F_1$ .
2. Make a comparison by adding the outstar pattern to the input pattern. If a match occurs, the same instar is excited in  $F_2$  and leads to an increase in the STM activity on  $F_1$ . That is, resonance takes place.

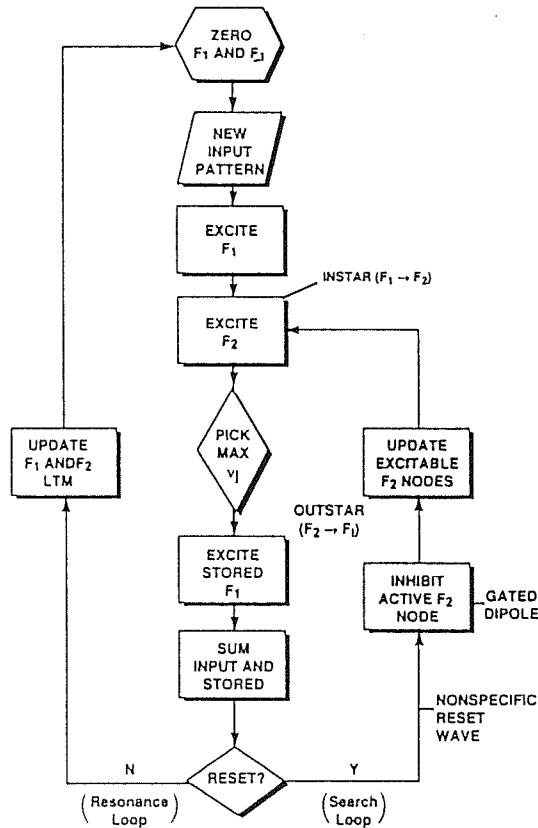


Figure 4.6 Flow diagram for the ART-1 algorithm.

3. Select, or associate, a node in  $F_2$  with the input pattern.
4. Update the LTMs of  $F_1$  and  $F_2$ . If a match does not occur, that is, the comparison on  $F_1$  leads to a more uniform input, the STM activity decreases.
5. If the decrease is below a threshold, called the vigilance, reset  $F_2$ . The reset zeros-out the current active node in  $F_2$  and reestablishes the original input pattern.
6. Reexcite the instars and choose a new maximum while suppressing the original active node.
7. Compare a second outstar pattern with the input.
8. Continue the sequence until matching (resonance), or until no active  $F_2$  nodes remain.
9. Reinitial  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  before each new input pattern.

With notation from chapter 3, the equations for the ART-1 are as follows. Starting with the  $F_1$  layer, assume the STM shunting equation. Then,

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + (1 - A_i x_i) J_i^+ - (B_1 + C_1 x_i) J_i^-, \quad \forall i, \quad (4.20)$$

where  $J_i^+$  is the total excitatory inputs and  $J_i^-$  is the total inhibitory inputs. That is,

$$J_i^+ = I_i + D_1 \sum_j f(x_j) Z_{ji}, \quad \forall i, \quad (4.21)$$

and

$$J_i^- = \sum_j f(x_j), \quad \forall i. \quad (4.22)$$

Substituting gives

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + (1 - A_i x_i) \left[ I_i + D_1 \sum_j f(x_j) Z_{ji} \right] - (B_1 + C_1 x_i) \left[ \sum_j f(x_j) \right], \quad \forall i. \quad (4.23)$$

The  $F_1$  steady-state STM activation,  $\bar{x}_i$ , is bounded by

$$-\frac{B_1}{C_1} \leq \bar{x}_i \leq \frac{1}{A_1}, \quad \forall i. \quad (4.24)$$

When  $F_2$  is inactive ( $x_j = 0, \forall j$ ), (4.23) becomes

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + (1 - A_i x_i) I_i, \quad \forall i, \quad (4.25)$$

which gives a steady-state STM of

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{I_i}{1 + A_i I_i}. \quad (4.26)$$

When node  $v_j \in F_2$  is active, only  $x_j \neq 0$ . Equation (4.23) becomes

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + (1 - A_i x_i) (I_i + D_1 Z_{ji}) - (B_1 + C_1 x_i), \quad \forall i, \quad (4.27)$$

assuming  $f(x_j) = 1$ .

Then, the steady-state STM is

$$\bar{x}_i = \frac{I_i + D_1 Z_{ji} - B_1}{1 + A_i (I_i + D_1 Z_{ji}) + C_1}, \quad \forall i, \quad (4.28)$$

where  $Z_{ji}$  is the LTM for  $\bar{x}_i > 0$ . Note,  $\bar{x}_i > 0$  if and only if

$$I_i + D_1 Z_{ji} - B_1 > 0, \quad \forall i.$$

That is, the LTM trace satisfies

$$Z_{ji} > \frac{B_1 - I_i}{D_1}, \forall i.$$

Assume binary inputs. Then,  $I_i \in \{0, 1\}$  giving

$$Z_{ji} > \bar{Z} = \frac{B_1 - 1}{D_1}, \forall i. \quad (4.29)$$

Continuing with  $F_2$ , the STM is

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_j = -x_j + (1 - A_2 x_j) J_j^+ - (B_2 + C_2 x_j) J_j^-, \forall j, \quad (4.30)$$

where

$$J_j^- = g(x_j) + D_2 \sum_j h(x_i) Z_{ij}, \forall j. \quad (4.31)$$

and

$$J_j^- = \sum_{k \neq j} g(x_k), \forall j. \quad (4.32)$$

Substituting gives

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon \dot{x}_j = & -x_j + (1 - A_2 x_j) [g(x_j) + D_2 \sum_j h(x_i) Z_{ij}] \\ & - (B_2 + C_2 x_j) [\sum_{k \neq j} g(x_k)], \forall j. \end{aligned} \quad (4.33)$$

The  $F_2$  steady-state STM activation,  $\bar{x}_j$ , is bounded by

$$-\frac{B_2}{C_2} \leq \bar{x}_j \leq \frac{1}{A_2}, \forall j. \quad (4.34)$$

Turning next to the LTM, the  $F_1 \rightarrow F_2$  (bottom-up) LTM trace assumes a gated dipole model:

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = k_1 f(x_j) [-E_{ij} Z_{ij} + h(x_i)], \forall i, j. \quad (4.35)$$

Choose  $E_{ij}$  for distinguishing between subsets and supersets and for modeling the W-F law (see section 4-1). Figure 4.7 shows two patterns. Make assumptions so that the W-F law holds.

$F_1$  excites  $F_2$  so

$$x_j = \sum_i f(x_i) Z_{ij} = |I| \hat{Z}_{ij}, \forall j. \quad (4.36)$$

Thus, changes in the input patterns give

$$\Delta x_j = \Delta I (\hat{Z}_{ij}). \quad (4.37)$$

Or,

$$\frac{\Delta x_j}{x_j} = \frac{\Delta I}{I} = \text{constant}. \quad (4.38)$$

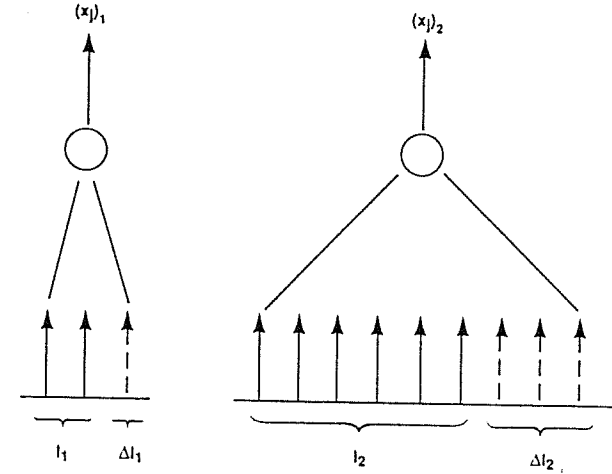


Figure 4.7 The Weber-Fechner law is that the response to a change in input,  $\Delta I$ , depends on the relative change  $\Delta I/I$ . The ART-1 algorithm gives the same response if  $\Delta I_1/I_1 = \Delta I_2/I_2$ , as shown.

If a minimum  $\delta x_j$  is just noticeable, say  $\delta x_j = (\Delta x_j)_{\text{threshold}}$ , (4.38) gives

$$x_j \approx \frac{(\Delta x_j)_{\text{threshold}}}{\text{constant}}, \forall j.$$

Thus,

$$x_j \approx \text{constant} \Rightarrow |I| \hat{Z}_{ij} = \text{constant}.$$

That is, for a W-F law response, increasing the active  $F_1$  nodes decreases the magnitude of  $Z_{ij}$  (the LTM trace).

To build this relationship in  $E_{ij}$ , assume competition among the  $Z_{ij}$  terms for synaptic sites. Let

$$E_{ij} = h(x_i) + \frac{1}{L} \sum_{k \neq i} h(x_k), \forall i, j \quad (4.39)$$

and

$$k_1 = KL. \quad (4.40)$$

Substituting in (4.35) gives

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = K f(x_j) [(1 - Z_{ij}) L h(x_i) - Z_{ij} \sum_{k \neq i} h(x_k)]. \quad (4.41)$$

The size of  $Z_{ij}$  depends on the number of active nodes. That is,

$$\bar{Z}_{ij} = \frac{L h(x_i)}{L h(x_i) + \sum_{k \neq i} h(x_k)} \propto \frac{1}{|\mathcal{X}|}.$$



where  $|\mathcal{X}|$  is the active  $F_1$  nodes and  $L$  is the relative strength of bottom-up competition among the LTM traces.  $L$  small (near one) implies stronger LTM competition.

Figure 4.8 illustrates the response to subsets and supersets. When input  $I^{(1)}$  is impressed, the  $F_2$  response is largest at  $v_1$ , because  $(Z_{ij})_1 > (Z_{ij})_2$ . When input  $I^{(2)}$  is impressed, containing  $I^{(1)}$ , the response is largest at  $v_2$ . In this way ART-1 distinguishes a set and a superset.

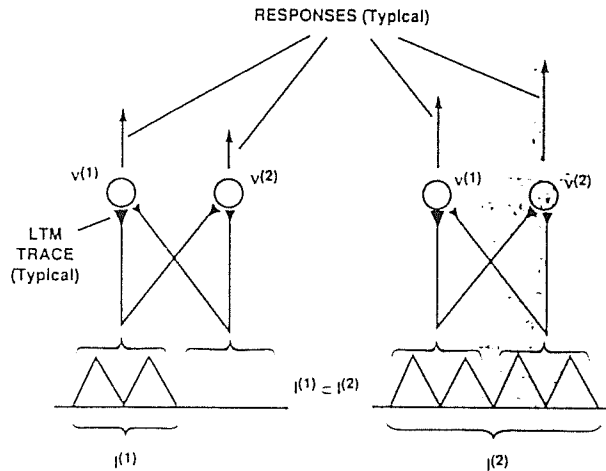


Figure 4.8 ART-1 contains the Weber–Fechner law by making the long-term memory traces inversely proportional to the activated  $F_1$  neurons. Then, ART-1 can distinguish a subset  $I^{(1)}$  from a superset  $I^{(2)}$ , as shown.

Further simplify by assuming

$$\left. \begin{aligned} f(x_j) &= 1, & x_j &\text{ ON,} \\ h(x_k) &= 1, & x_k &\text{ ON.} \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (4.42)$$

Then

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = \begin{cases} K[(1 - Z_{ij}L - Z_{ij}(|\mathcal{X}| - 1)), & v_i, v_j \text{ ON,} \\ -K|\mathcal{X}|Z_{ij}, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ ON,} \\ 0, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ OFF.} \end{cases} \quad (4.43)$$

Assume fast learning. That is, by (4.43) the steady-state LTM is

$$\bar{Z}_{ij} = \begin{cases} \frac{L}{L-1+|\mathcal{X}|}, & v_i, v_j \text{ ON,} \\ 0, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ ON.} \end{cases} \quad (4.44)$$

Turning next to the  $F_2 \rightarrow F_1$  (top-down) LTM trace, assume a gated dipole model, that is

$$\dot{Z}_{ji} = k_2 f(x_j)[-E_{ij}Z_{ij} + h(x_i)], \quad \forall i, j. \quad (4.45)$$

Assume  $E_{ij} = 1$ , giving

$$\dot{Z}_{ji} = f(x_j)[-Z_{ij} + h(x_i)].$$

Assume

$$\left. \begin{aligned} f(x_j) &= 1, & x_j &\text{ ON,} \\ h(x_i) &= 1, & x_i &\text{ ON,} \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (4.46)$$

to give

$$\dot{Z}_{ji} = \begin{cases} -Z_{ji} + 1, & v_i, v_j \text{ ON,} \\ -Z_{ji}, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ ON,} \\ 0, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ OFF.} \end{cases} \quad (4.47)$$

Assuming fast learning gives

$$\bar{Z}_{ji} = \begin{cases} 1, & v_i, v_j \text{ ON,} \\ 0, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ ON.} \end{cases} \quad (4.48)$$

When a mismatch happens on  $F_1$ , a more uniform activity pattern appears. This uniformity leads to a decrease in the active nodes, that is,  $|\mathcal{X}|$  decreases. When  $F_2$  is not active,  $|\mathcal{X}| = |I|$ . When  $F_2$  is active and mismatched,  $|\mathcal{X}| < |I|$ .

Define  $\rho$  (the vigilance) so that if

$$\frac{|\mathcal{X}|}{|I|} < \rho, \quad 0 < \rho \leq 1, \quad (4.49)$$

reset occurs.

Assume reset inhibits the currently active  $F_2$  node for a prolonged time. Define  $f(x_j)$  so that

$$f(x_j) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } T_j = \max\{T_k | k \in \mathcal{J}\}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

where  $\mathcal{J}$  is the set of indices of  $F_2$  nodes that may be activated.

At first:

$$\mathcal{J} = \{M + 1, M + 2, \dots, N\}. \quad (4.50)$$

Assume a rule for matching input and LTM traces, called the 2/3 Rule (defined below). The system needs this rule because readout of  $V^J$  (outstar) may activate some  $F_1$  nodes not previously activated by the input  $I$  alone. This activation would result in preventing the input from being encoded in the  $F_2$  LTM. Moreover, a single node in  $F_2$  may code disjoint input patterns, despite the fact the two patterns shared no features.

The 2/3 rule controls which  $v_i$  in  $F_1$  remains active. Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the indice set receiving positive inputs. That is,

$$\mathcal{I} = \{1, 2, \dots, M\}. \quad (4.51)$$

Let  $\mathcal{V}^j$  be the indices of  $F_1$  that are ON when  $v_j$  is ON.

Example: For the situation in figure 4.9,  $\mathcal{I} = \{1, 2, 4, 5\}$  and  $\mathcal{V}^j = \{1, 3, 5\}$ . If  $\mathcal{X}$  is the indice set of  $F_1$  that are ON, the 2/3 rule is

$$\mathcal{X} = \begin{cases} \mathcal{I}, & \text{if } F_2 \text{ OFF,} \\ \mathcal{I} \cap \mathcal{V}^{(j)}, & \text{if } v_j \in F_2 \text{ ON.} \end{cases} \quad (4.52)$$

For the figure 4.9 example,  $\mathcal{X} = \{1, 5\}$ .

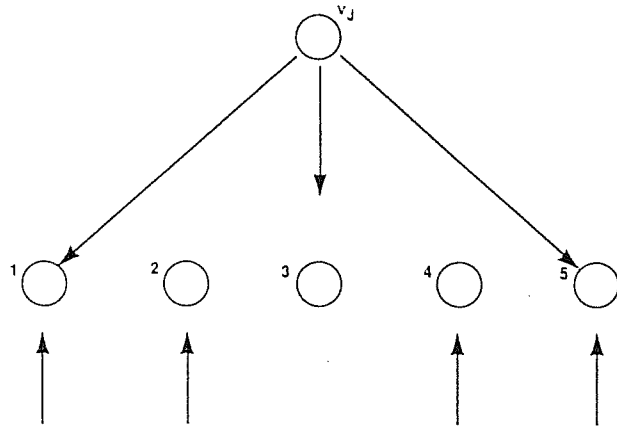


Figure 4.9 Example of ART-1. An ART-1 with five  $F_1$  nodes has external inputs to  $v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4$  and  $v_5$ . A  $F_2$  node activates and produces more inputs to nodes  $v_1, v_3$ , and  $v_5$  by the  $F_2 \rightarrow F_1$  long-term memory trace.

Summarizing ART-1, the algorithm is as follows. For a binary pattern  $I$ , with components  $I_i$ ,

$$I_i = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i \in \mathcal{I}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (4.53)$$

The bottom-up activation is

$$T_j = D_2 \sum_{i \in \mathcal{X}} Z_{ij}, \quad \forall j. \quad (4.54)$$

The  $F_2$  node turned-on is

$$f(x_j) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } T_j = \max\{T_k | k \in \mathcal{J}\}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where  $\mathcal{J}$  are the indices that may be activated.

Apply the 2/3 rule for  $F_1$  activation:

$$\mathcal{X} = \begin{cases} \mathcal{I}, & \text{if } F_2 \text{ OFF,} \\ \mathcal{I} \cap \mathcal{V}^{(j)}, & \text{if } v_j \in F_2 \text{ ON.} \end{cases}$$

Reset (zero-out) the current  $F_2$  node for the duration of the input if

$$\frac{|\mathcal{X}|}{|\mathcal{I}|} < \rho, \quad 0 < \rho \leq 1, \quad (4.55)$$

where  $\rho$  is given. If reset does not happen, update the LTM traces using fast learning.

$$Z_{ij} = \begin{cases} \frac{L}{L-1+|\mathcal{X}|}, & v_i, v_j \text{ ON } (i \in \mathcal{X}), \\ 0, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ ON } (i \in \mathcal{X}), \end{cases} \quad (4.56)$$

and

$$Z_{ji} = \begin{cases} 1, & v_i, v_j \text{ ON,} \\ 0, & v_i \text{ OFF, } v_j \text{ ON.} \end{cases} \quad (4.57)$$

The initial bottom-up LTM trace is

$$0 < Z_{ij}(0) < \frac{L}{L-1+M}. \quad (4.58)$$

where  $L$  and  $M$  are given.

The inequality allows direct access. That is, if  $v_j$  has learned an input,  $v_j$  is the first node chosen during search. The initial top-down LTM trace is

$$\bar{Z} = \frac{B_1 - 1}{D_1} < Z_{ji}(0) < 1,$$

where  $\max\{1, D_1\} < B_1 < 1 + D_1$ .

Consider a simple example of ART-1. Figure 4.10 shows the problem, with  $M = 3, N = 5$ . Let  $L = 2$ . Then

$$0 < Z_{ij}(0) < \frac{L}{L-1+M} = 1/2.$$

Assume for  $Z_{ij}(0)$ . In matrix form for convenience,

$$[Z_{ij}(0)] = \begin{bmatrix} 1/4 & 1/8 \\ 1/4 & 1/8 \\ 1/4 & 1/8 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let  $D_1 = 1$  and  $B_1 = 3/2$ . The initial top-down LTM is  $\bar{Z} < Z_{ji} < 1$ , where

$$\bar{Z} = \frac{B_1 - 1}{D_1} = 1/2.$$

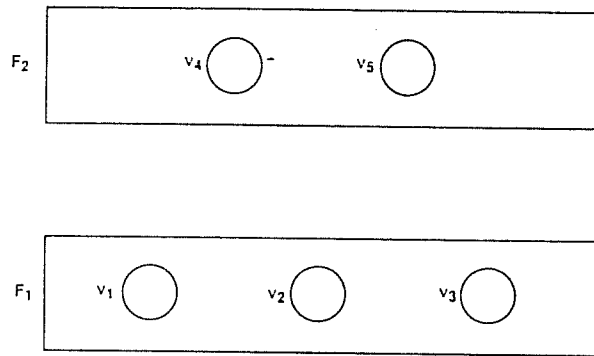


Figure 4.10 Example ART-1 neural network.

Assume

$$[Z_{ji}(0)] = \begin{bmatrix} 3/4 & 3/4 & 3/4 \\ 3/4 & 3/4 & 3/4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Assume  $I^{(1)}$  shown in figure 4.10. If  $v_i$  ON, assume  $D_2 = 1$  and  $h(x_i) = 1$ . Then, the inputs to  $F_2$  are

$$T_4 = \sum_i Z_{i4} = Z_{14} + Z_{24} = 1/2,$$

$$T_5 = \sum_i Z_{i5} = Z_{15} + Z_{25} = 1/4.$$

Thus,  $v_4$  is ON and  $v_5$  is OFF because  $T_4 > T_5$ . Applying the 2/3 rule,

$$\mathcal{X} = \mathcal{I} \cap \mathcal{V}^{(j)} = \mathcal{I} \cap \mathcal{V}^{(4)},$$

where

$$v_i \in \mathcal{V}^{(4)} \text{ if } Z_{4i} > \bar{Z} = 1/2,$$

giving

$$\mathcal{X} = \{1, 2\} \cap \{1, 2, 3\} = \{1, 2\}.$$

The reset test gives

$$\frac{|\mathcal{X}|}{|\mathcal{I}|} = \frac{2}{2} = 1.$$

That is, no reset occurs. Thus, learning takes place. Fast learning gives

$$Z_{ij} = \frac{L}{L - 1 + |\mathcal{X}|} = \frac{2}{2 - 1 + 2} = 2/3, \quad v_i, v_j \text{ ON,}$$

$$Z_{14} = Z_{24} = 2/3, \quad Z_{34} = 0,$$

$$Z_{ji} = 1, \quad v_i, v_j \text{ ON,}$$

$$Z_{41} = Z_{42} = 1, \quad Z_{34} = 0.$$

After  $I^{(1)}$  is applied, the bottom-up LTM traces are

$$[Z_{ij}(0)] = \begin{bmatrix} 2/3 & 1/8 \\ 2/3 & 1/8 \\ 0 & 1/8 \end{bmatrix},$$

and the top-down LTM traces are

$$[Z_{ji}(0)] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 3/4 & 3/4 & 3/4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Continuing with  $I^{(2)}$ , shown in figure 4.10, after learning

$$[Z_{ij}(0)] = \begin{bmatrix} 2/3 & 0 \\ 2/3 & 2/3 \\ 0 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix},$$

and

$$[Z_{ji}(0)] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

This simple system can learn only two patterns because  $F_2$  has two nodes.

In summary, the ART-1 algorithm can learn and recognize binary patterns. In real-world applications, use processing to give the binary inputs. One extension is analog input patterns, considered next.

2. ART-2. ART-2 extends ART-1. The characteristics of ART-2 are as follows.

1. ART-2 can handle binary or analog (gray-scale, continuous-valued) inputs.
2. ART-2 has the same overall structure as ART-1, that is, two layers  $F_1$  and  $F_2$ .
3. ART-2 matches the input and LTM trace by an  $L_2$  metric. (ART-1 matched by counting bits—the Hamming metric.)  $F_1$  includes noise suppression and contrast improvement. Thus, the input may be noisy. (Contrast improvement is not an issue with ART-1.)
4. ART-2 normalizes the input patterns so the dynamic range may be large and considers patterns that are multiples of each other the same.

Figure 4.6 shows a flow diagram of the ART-2 algorithm. The step-by-step operation of ART-2 is as follows.

1. Present an input pattern across the bottom of  $F_1$ . The resulting STM activity in  $F_1$  excites instar nodes on  $F_2$ . Lateral interactions in  $F_2$  pick the maximum response and suppresses the other nodes. The surviving node on  $F_2$  excites an outstar in  $F_1$ .
2. Apply the outstar pattern to the top of  $F_1$ , allowing a comparison between the filtered input and a LTM trace. A match reexcites the current instar on  $F_2$ , leading to increased STM activity on  $F_1$ . That is, resonance takes place. Resonance associates the node in  $F_2$  with the input pattern.

3. Update the LTMs of  $F_1$  and  $F_2$ . If a match does not happen, the comparison on  $F_1$  leads to a more uniform input, and the  $F_1$  STM activity decreases.
4. If the decrease is below a threshold (the vigilance), reset  $F_2$ . The reset zeros-out the current active node in  $F_2$  by a gated dipole.
5. Reestablish the original input pattern and reexcite the instars. Choose a new  $F_2$  maximum.
6. Compare a new outstar pattern with the filtered input.
7. Continue the sequence until matching (resonance), or until no nodes remain to be activated on  $F_2$ .
8. Reinitial the  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  fields before each new input pattern.

With notation from chapter 3, the equations for the ART-2 are as follows. Starting with the  $F_1$  layer,  $F_1$  consists of three levels shown in figure 4.11.  $F_1$  has the following characteristics:

1. The three levels allow amplifying the input pattern in the bottom and middle levels, while suppressing noise.
2. Readout of a top-down LTM pattern, to match with the STM pattern at the top  $F_1$  level, does not change the STM patterns of the bottom and middle layers. This decoupling

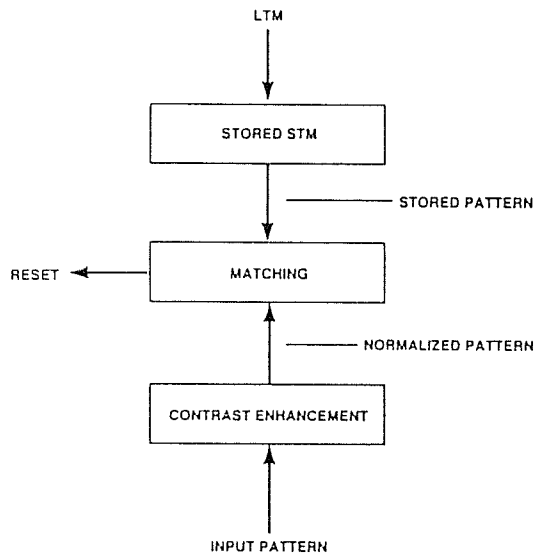


Figure 4.11 Architecture of the ART-2  $F_1$  layer. The  $F_1$  layer consists of three levels, which roughly operate as follows. The bottom level filters by enhancing and normalizing the input. The long-term memory activates the top level, restoring a past pattern. The middle level compares the filtered input and a stored pattern. If mismatch occurs, the system RESETs and continues.

- ensures that the LTM traces do not affect the amplifying and the noise suppression. The decoupling handles the stability-plasticity dilemma.
3. The top-down LTM trace learns the STM pattern, called the exemplar, produced at the top level of  $F_1$ . As learning takes place, the LTM trace changes. A mismatch caused by learning does not reset  $F_2$ .

Figure 4.12 shows the three  $F_1$  levels in detail. Each input node,  $I_i$ , is associated with six nodes, labeled  $p_i, q_i, u_i, v_i, x_i,$  and  $w_i$ . The shunting STM equation describes node activation. That is,

$$\epsilon \dot{V}_i = -AV_i + (1 - BV_i)J_i^+ - (C + DV_i)J_i^-, \quad (4.59)$$

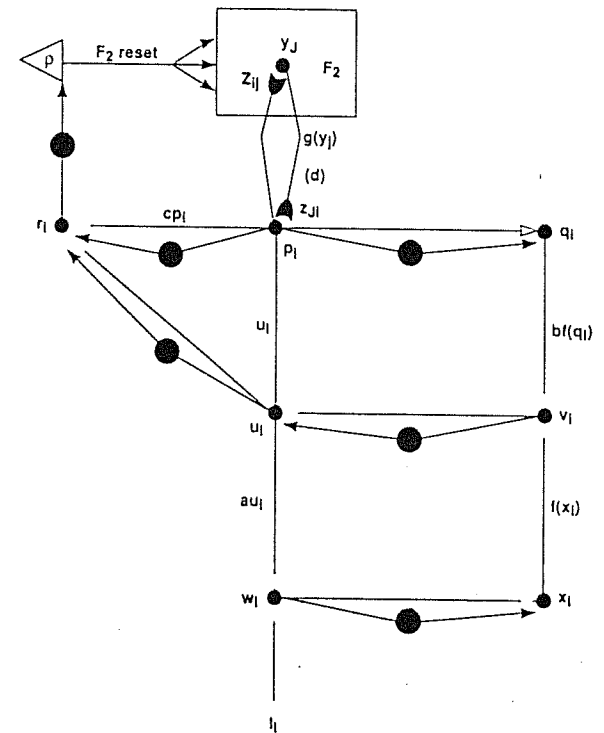


Figure 4.12 Details of the ART-2  $F_1$  layer. Each input  $I_i$  to  $F_1$  has six neurons in three levels. The dark circles denote normalizing. The text gives the activation equations. (From Carpenter and Grossberg, ART-2: Self-Organization of Stable Category Recognition Codes for Analog Input Patterns in *Applied Optics*, Vol. 26. Reprinted by permission of G. Carpenter and The Optical Society of America, 1987).

where  $\epsilon$  is the ratio of STM-to-LTM relaxation times, with  $0 < \epsilon \ll 1$ .  $J_i^+$  is the total excitatory inputs;  $J_i^-$  is the total inhibitory inputs.

Assuming  $B, C = 0$  in (4.59), the steady-state STM of a  $F_1$  node is

$$\bar{v}_i = \frac{J_i^+}{A + DJ_i^-}. \quad (4.60)$$

Construct ART-2 by specifying equations for  $J_i^+$  and  $J_i^-$  and by giving the connections between the nodes.

The STM equations for the top, middle, and bottom levels are

$$p_i = u_i + \sum_j g(y_j)Z_{ji}. \quad (4.61)$$

$$q_i = \frac{p_i}{e + \|p\|}. \quad (4.62)$$

$$u_i = \frac{v_i}{e + \|v\|}. \quad (4.63)$$

$$v_i = f(x_i) + bf(q_i). \quad (4.64)$$

$$w_i = I_i + au_i. \quad (4.65)$$

and

$$x_i = \frac{w_i}{e + \|w\|}. \quad (4.66)$$

Continuing with  $F_2$ , the STM is the same as ART-1. That is, let  $T_j$  be the input from  $F_1$ .

$$T_j = \sum_i p_i Z_{ij}. \quad (4.67)$$

Assume for the  $F_2$  STM trace,  $y_j$ , that lateral interactions causes  $y_j \rightarrow 0$  for  $j \neq J$ , where

$$T_j = \max_j \{T_j, j = M + 1, \dots, N\}. \quad (4.68)$$

Reset  $F_2$  (by a gated dipole field in  $F_2$ ), giving

$$g(y_j) = \begin{cases} d, & \text{if } T_j = \max_j \{T_j\} \text{ not previously reset,} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (4.69)$$

Thus,

$$p_i = \begin{cases} u_i, & \text{if } F_2 \text{ inactive,} \\ u_i + dZ_{ji}, & \text{if } v_j \in F_2 \text{ is active,} \end{cases} \quad (4.70)$$

where  $0 < d < 1$ .

Turning to the LTM, the top-down LTM trace is

$$\dot{Z}_{ji} = g(y_j)(p_i - Z_{ji}). \quad (4.71)$$

The bottom-up LTM trace is

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = g(y_j)(p_i - Z_{ij}). \quad (4.72)$$

Note  $Z_{ij}, Z_{ji} = 0$  if  $y_j = 0$ . That is, for  $j \neq J$ .

For  $v_j$  active and  $v_j$  inactive,  $j \neq J$  by (4.70). Then,

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = d(p_i - Z_{ij}) = d(u_i + dZ_{ji} - Z_{ij}).$$

That is, for the top-down LTM trace

$$\dot{Z}_{ji} = d(1-d)\left(\frac{u_i}{1-d} - Z_{ji}\right). \quad (4.73)$$

Similarly, for the bottom-up LTM trace

$$\dot{Z}_{ij} = d(1-d)\left(\frac{u_i}{1-d} - Z_{ij}\right). \quad (4.74)$$

ART-2 uses a  $L_2$  norm for measuring the degree of matching. Let

$$r_i = \frac{u_i + cp_i}{e + \|u\| + \|cp\|}. \quad (4.75)$$

where  $\|r\|$  is a  $L_2$  norm of  $r = (r_1, \dots, r_M)$ , that is,

$$\|r\| = \sqrt{r_1^2 + \dots + r_M^2}. \quad (4.76)$$

The norm,  $\|r\|$ , measures the match between the input,  $u_i$ , and stored LTM,  $p_i$ . By algebraic manipulation,

$$\|r\| = \frac{1 + 2\|cp\|\cos(u, p) + \|cp\|^2}{1 + \|cp\|}. \quad (4.77)$$

Write (4.77) with  $Z_j = (Z_{j1}, \dots, Z_{jM})$ . That is,

$$\|r\| = \frac{[(1+c)^2 + 2(1+c)\|cdZ_j\|\cos(u, Z_j) + \|cdZ_j\|^2]^{1/2}}{1 + [c^2 + 2c\|cdZ_j\|\cos(u, Z_j) + \|cdZ_j\|^2]^{1/2}}. \quad (4.78)$$

Figure 4.13 shows that over the range  $\|cdZ_j\| < 1$  the norm  $\|r\|$  is a matching parameter. The vertical coordinate gives the degree of matching. The horizontal coordinate gives the degree of learning, or sensitivity. For increased sensitivity with increased learning (larger  $Z_j$ ), assume  $\|cdZ_j\| < 1$ .

By (4.73) the steady-state  $\dot{Z}_{ji} = \frac{u_i}{(1-d)}$ . The constraint  $\|cdZ_j\| < 1$  becomes

$$\frac{cd}{1-d} < 1. \quad (4.79)$$

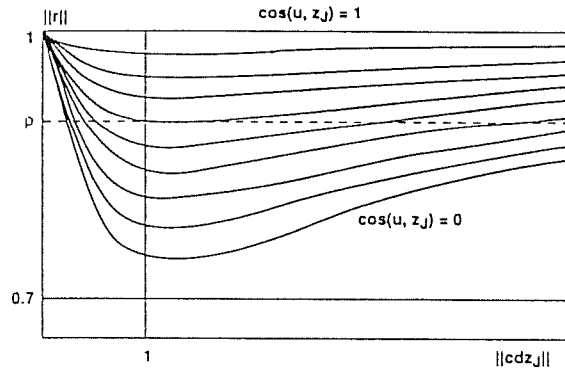


Figure 4.13 Plot of the ART-2 norm that gauges matching.  $\|r\|$ , which is a function of  $\cos(u, p)$  and  $\|cdZ_j\|$ , matches the filtered input pattern,  $u$ , and a stored pattern,  $p$ . Restricting  $\|cdZ_j\| < 1$  shows  $\|r\| = 1$  for a perfect match and  $\|r\| = 0$  for  $u$  and  $p$  orthogonal. ART-2 is reset if  $\|r\|$  is below the vigilance parameter  $\rho$ , which adjusts matching sensitivity. (From Carpenter and Grossberg, ART-2: Self-Organization of Stable Category Recognition Codes for Analog Input Patterns in *Applied Optics*, Vol. 26. Reprinted by permission of G. Carpenter and The Optical Society of America, 1987).

Thus, the closer  $cd/(1-d)$  is to one, the more sensitive the system. The learning categories are also more stable. Thus, initial categories are the same as later categories (stability in the encoding sense).

Reset occurs if  $\|r\| < \rho$ , that is, when the input-LTM matching is below the vigilance. If  $\|r\| < \rho$ , learning takes place when the input-LTM match is above vigilance. (The match may not be perfect, but is close enough.) Then, update the LTM (bottom-up and top-down) traces.

Choose initial LTM traces for proper operation as follows.

By figure 4.13, if  $\|Z_j\| \rightarrow 0$ , no reset occurs during learning. Thus, setting top-down LTM traces to

$$Z_{ji}(0) = 0 \tag{4.80}$$

enables initial learning.

Choose the initial bottom-up LTM traces to stabilize the category selection. The steady-state bottom-up LTM traces are

$$\|Z^j\| \xrightarrow{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1-d} \tag{4.81}$$

To have  $\|Z^j\|$  for a committed node larger than  $\|Z^j\|$  for an uncommitted node, assume

$$\|Z^j(0)\| \leq \frac{1}{1-d} \tag{4.82}$$

If  $Z^j(0)$  is uniform,

$$0 < Z_{ij}(0) \leq \frac{1}{(1-d)\sqrt{M}} \tag{4.83}$$

Thus, choose initial bottom-up LTM traces to satisfy the inequality. A common set of initial values is

$$Z_{ij}(0) = \frac{1}{(1-d)\sqrt{M}} \tag{4.84}$$

In summary, the ART-2 NN is fairly complex. Nevertheless, simple examples can show its global behavior. The exercises give examples computable by hand.

The ART-2 algorithm has some arbitrariness. When to make the norm-to-threshold comparison is unclear for deciding reset. In practice the matching test is made before the  $F_1$  STM reaches steady-state.

The adaptive-resonance-theoretic NNs are important for modeling and for applications. And many researchers expect their importance to increase relative to other kinds of NNs. Recently, ART-2A and ART-3 were introduced [16,17].

ART-2A is a version of ART-2 for large-scale neural computations. The operating principles of ART-2A are the same as ART-2.

ART-3 is a multilayer NN, that is, with  $F_1, F_2, \dots$ , that models the biological synapse. Discussion of ART-3 is postponed until researchers develop its utility.

### 4.3 HOPFIELD NEURAL NETWORKS

The preceding ART NNs model biology. This section and the next develop two nonbiological NNs, Hopfield NNs and perceptrons. They are interesting because of their applications. These nonbiological NNs are special cases of the general theory developed in chapter 2.

Historically, the Hopfield NN regenerated interest in the field. This NN is popular with theoreticians because its simplicity allows for extended mathematical analyses. The Hopfield NN often serves to exhibit properties of NNs to new readers. Its applications, however, are limited because more powerful NNs are known.

Matrix notation is convenient for deriving the Hopfield NN. Let

$$x = (x_1, \dots, x_N)^T \tag{4.85}$$

be a  $N \times 1$  matrix associated with an  $N$ -element memory, where  $x_i$  is the STM trace,  $x_i \in \mathfrak{A}$ , and  $()^T$  is the transpose operation.

Let

$$z^i = (z^i_1, \dots, z^i_N)^T \tag{4.86}$$

be the  $i$ th stored memory with  $N$  elements, where  $z^i_j \in \mathfrak{A}$ .  $z^i$  is a LTM trace. Assume  $M$  stored memories, given by the set  $\{z^i\}_1^M$ .

Construct a dynamic system with specified asymptotic properties as follows.

Starting from an initial vector,  $x(0)$ , the system is to relax to the nearest  $z^i$ . A metric measures closeness. Write the system symbolically as

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = f(x, z^1, \dots, z^M), \quad (4.87)$$

where  $x$  is the dependent variable and  $z^1, \dots, z^M$  are parameters.

To show asymptotic properties, define a potential function,  $P(x, z^1, \dots, z^M)$ , for the right-side of (4.87). Let

$$\frac{dP}{dx} = -f(x, z^1, \dots, z^M), \quad (4.88)$$

where  $P(\cdot)$  is a scalar. Matrix differentiation rules define  $dP/dx$  [20, p. 135].

To be stable  $P(x)$  generally opens upward. The vectors  $\{z^1, \dots, z^M\}$  establish the minima of  $P(x)$ . The vectors are the asymptotic stable points of the system.

For example, a simple stable potential is the form

$$P(x, z^1, \dots, z^M) = (a/2)x^T x + P'(x, z^1, \dots, z^M), \quad (4.89)$$

where  $P'(\cdot)$  is a perturbation from a reference quadratic potential.

The dynamic system is

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax - \frac{dP'}{dx}. \quad (4.90)$$

The simplest system has a single memory ( $M = 1$ ). Let

$$P(x, z^1, \dots, z^M) = (a/2)x^T x + z^T x, \text{ for } a > 0, \quad (4.91)$$

giving

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax + z. \quad (4.92)$$

This system relaxes to  $x = z/a$  for every initial condition,  $x(0)$ , as shown in figure 4.14.

Construct a two memory system ( $M = 2$ ) as follows.

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax + C_1(x, z^1)z^1 + C_2(x, z^2)z^2, \quad (4.93)$$

where  $C_1(\cdot, \cdot)$  and  $C_2(\cdot, \cdot)$  are coefficients.

Choose  $C_1(\cdot, \cdot)$  to measure closeness of  $x(t)$  to  $z^1$ . Assume  $a = 1$  (equivalent to rescaling the variables). If  $C_1 \gg C_2$ , the system relaxes to  $z^1$ , as shown in figure 4.15.

A simple closeness measure is using the inner product of  $\text{sgn } x$  and  $z^1$ . Applying an inner product, let

$$C_1(x, z^1) = (\text{sgn } x, z^1) = \sum_{i=1}^N (\text{sgn } x_i) z_i^1. \quad (4.94)$$

When  $x = z^1$ , (4.94) becomes

$$C_1(z^1, z^1) = (\text{sgn } z^1, z^1) = \|z^1\|_1. \quad (4.95)$$

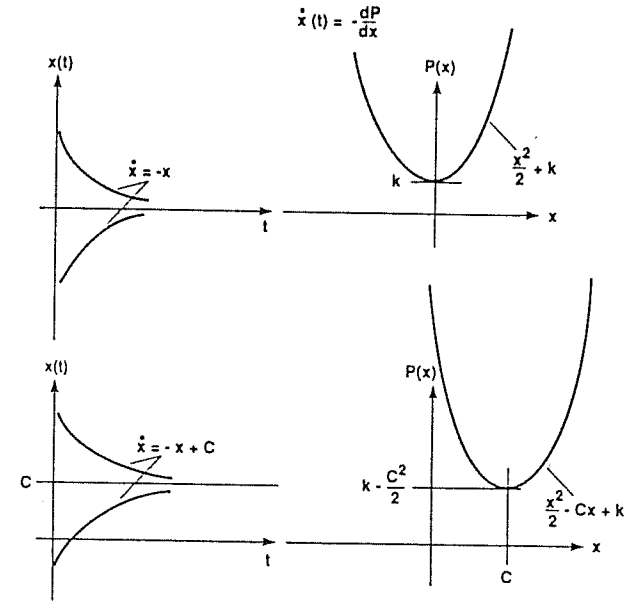


Figure 4.14 Two simple differential equations that are asymptotically stable and their potential functions. Stable potential functions are concave upward. Extension to finite dimensional systems is direct using matrix notation.

Many inner products are possible for  $\|z^1\|$ . The standard inner product gives

$$\|z^1\|_1 = \sum_{i=1}^N |z_i^1|, \quad (4.96)$$

which is the sum norm, or more picturesquely, the Manhattan norm.

When  $x = z^2$ , (4.94) becomes

$$C_1(z^2, z^1) = 0 \quad (4.97)$$

for uncorrelated coefficients of the memory vectors.

Defining  $C_2(\cdot, \cdot)$  in a similar way, these coefficients measure the closeness of  $x(t)$  to each stored memory.

Generalizing to  $M$  memories, the system becomes

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax + z^1(\text{sgn } x, z^1) + \dots + z^M(\text{sgn } x, z^M). \quad (4.98)$$

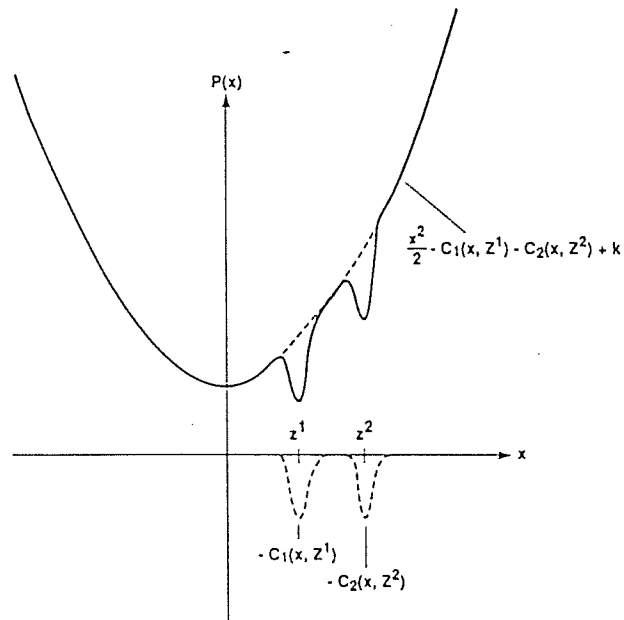


Figure 4.15 The Hopfield neural network constructs a potential that generally opens upward. To illustrate, consider two functions,  $(z_1, x)$  and  $(z_2, x)$ . When  $x$  is close to  $z_1$ ,  $(z_1, x)$  dominates over  $(z_2, x)$ . Then, the system relaxes to  $z_1$ . Similar comments hold for  $z_2$ . As shown, the potential has local minima near the stored memories,  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ . The potential, however, may have other (spurious) minima causing the system to relax to nonsense values.

Rewrite (4.98) exploiting the identities

$$z(\operatorname{sgn} x, z) = (\operatorname{sgn} x, z)z = (z^T \operatorname{sgn} x)z = (zz^T) \operatorname{sgn} x.$$

Factoring out  $\operatorname{sgn} x$  gives

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax + (z^1 z^{1T} + \dots + z^M z^{MT}) \operatorname{sgn} x. \quad (4.99)$$

The standard form of the Hopfield NN is

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax + T \operatorname{sgn} x, \quad (4.100)$$

where

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^M z^i z^{iT} \quad (4.101)$$

is the sum of the outer products of the stored memory vectors.

The perturbation potential is

$$\frac{dP'}{dx} = -T \operatorname{sgn} x, \quad (4.102)$$

where  $P'(x)$  opens downward. Adding  $P'(x)$  to the upward-opening quadratic term produces local minima.

Some minima correspond to memories. Other minima are spurious stable points, that is, not vectors used in defining  $T$ .

Choose the coefficient  $a$  to normalize the memory lengths. As  $x(t)$  approaches  $z^1$ , the system becomes

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -ax + z^1 \|z^1\|_1.$$

If  $x(t) \rightarrow z^1$ ,  $\frac{dx}{dt} \rightarrow 0$  for  $t$  large, giving

$$0 = -ax + z^1 \|z^1\|_1.$$

Thus,  $a = \|z^1\|_1$ . Similar comments hold for  $z^2, \dots, z^M$ . Assuming all stored memories have the same length, setting  $a = \|z^i\|_1$  ensures convergence to the stored memory and not to a scalar multiple.

If  $\|z^i\|_1$  is the same for all memory vectors, the memory vectors are distributed on the surface of an  $N$ -dimensional sphere. This is the simplex signal set in digital communication theory.

Other norms may be used. For example, the weighted norm

$$C_1(x, z) = (\operatorname{sgn} x, z)_W = z^T W \operatorname{sgn} x,$$

where  $W$  is positive definite, that is, a square matrix with positive real eigenvalues. This norm allows weighting the significance of each element. For example, the most significant bit (MSB) could be weighted more than the least significant bit (LSB).

Summarizing the properties of the Hopfield NN, the system from (4.98) is

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + z^1 (\operatorname{sgn} x, z^1) + \dots + z^M (\operatorname{sgn} x, z^M). \quad (4.103)$$

If  $x$  is nearest to  $z^1$  as measured by the sum norm,

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + z^1 (\operatorname{sgn} z^1, z^1) + \dots + z^M (\operatorname{sgn} z^1, z^M)$$

and

$$\epsilon \dot{x} \approx -x + z^1 (\operatorname{sgn} z^1, z^1).$$

Or,  $x(0) \rightarrow z^1$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

Computer simulation shows that to avoid convergence to a spurious minima,

$$M \leq 0.15N. \quad (4.104)$$



That is, the stored memories are equal to or less than 15 percent of the elements.

Connecting the Hopfield NN with the general theory of chapter 2 is by manipulation. Write (4.103) in component form

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + \sum_{j=1}^N t_{ij} \text{sgn } x_j. \quad (4.105)$$

Replace the  $\text{sgn}()$  function with a sigmoid function, that is,

$$\text{sgn } x_j \rightarrow f(x_j), \quad (4.106)$$

giving

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + \sum_{j=1}^N t_{ij} f(x_j). \quad (4.107)$$

Let  $f(x_j) = S_{ji}$  and  $t_{ij} = Z_{ji}$ . Then,

$$\epsilon \dot{x}_i = -x_i + \sum_{j=1}^N S_{ji} Z_{ji}. \quad (4.108)$$

which is the additive STM equation without external inputs derived in chapter 2.

Thus, derive the Hopfield NN by starting with the general additive STM equations, neglecting terms and making simplifications. Not vice versa.

Applications of the Hopfield NN follow from its properties and interpreting the inputs-outputs strings. First, if the initial vector,  $x(0)$ , is a message N-bits long with errors, the NN relaxes to the nearest correct message. That is, the Hopfield NN gives forward error correction (FEC) by operating as a decoder of a block-encoded message.

Second, if the initial vector is part of a stored memory, the NN relaxes to the nearest complete memory. That is, the NN is a content-addressable memory (CAM).

Third, if the initial vector is a memory trace, the NN relaxes to a different memory having to do with the input. That is, the NN is an associative memory.

#### 4.4 PERCEPTRONS

Nonbiological NNs have many applications. The preceding Hopfield NN is one class of nonbiological NNs. Another class is perceptrons. The advantages of these nonbiological NNs lie in their use as calculation tools and not in the insight they give to neural operation.

Understanding perceptrons, however, is important for at least two reasons. First, perceptrons compose the majority of NNs today. For this reason they are a common reference for comparing NNs. Second, a researcher faced with meetings, discussions, and journal articles needs an understanding of perceptron basics and rules of thumb.

This section introduces perceptrons as follows. First, it develops the feedforward structure by a geometric approach for convex and nonconvex decision regions, multiple

classification categories, and multidimensional inputs. Next, it shows that the most general perceptron has two hidden layers, and it discusses the classical exclusive OR (XOR) problem. Then, it discusses self-learning strategies to speed up the widely used backpropagation algorithm.

Consider specifying regions in a two-dimensional (2-D) space. Figure 4.16 shows a 2-D input space with Cartesian coordinates  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ . A line separates two semi-infinite regions. To establish notation, assume the equation of the line is

$$w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2 - \theta = 0. \quad (4.109)$$

The region to the right or below the line is

$$w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2 - \theta > 0. \quad (4.110)$$

The region to the left or above the line is

$$w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2 - \theta < 0.$$

Equivalently, this region is also

$$-w_1 x_1 - w_2 x_2 + \theta > 0. \quad (4.111)$$

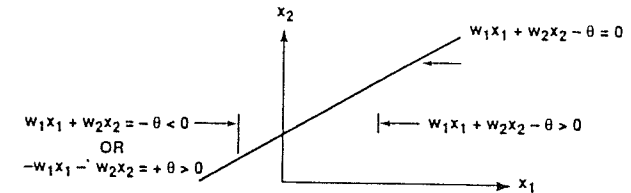


Figure 4.16 Semi-infinite regions in two dimensions. Replacing the equal sign by an inequality in the equation for a line defines regions to the left or right.

In the following treatment, the  $>$  inequality is convenient, so equations (4.110) and (4.111) are used. Note that except for the sign, (4.110) and (4.111) are the same.

For example, figure 4.17 shows a triangular region  $R$ . Region  $R$ , a set of points  $(x_1, x_2)$ , satisfies three inequalities of the forms of (4.110). That is, region  $R$  is right of line 1 and above line 2 and left of line 3. In defining line 1, line 2, and line 3, choose the signs of the coefficients so that the terms are positive in the inequalities.

Thus, write  $R$  as

$$R = \{(x_1, x_2) | (w_{11}x_1 + w_{12}x_2 + \theta_1 > 0) \cap (w_{21}x_1 + w_{22}x_2 + \theta_2 > 0) \cap (w_{31}x_1 + w_{32}x_2 + \theta_3 > 0)\}, \quad (4.112)$$

where  $\cap$  is the logical AND (intersection) operator.

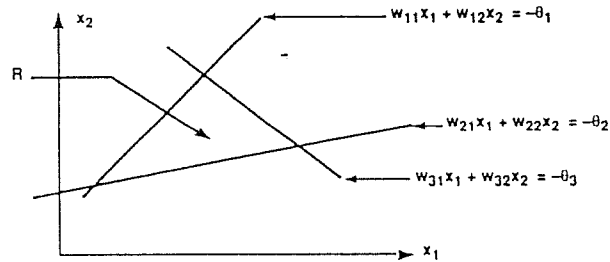
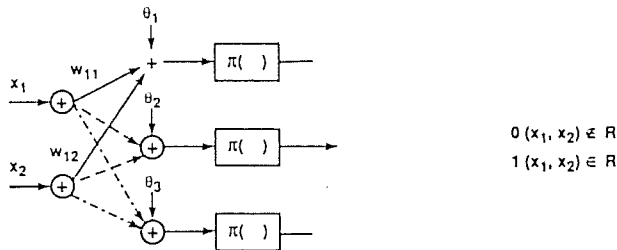


Figure 4.17 Specifying a finite region in two dimensions. To apply to neural networks, use set notation and greater-than inequalities.

Figure 4.18 shows a network implementing (4.112). Each summation node generates a line. The unit step function,  $\Pi(\cdot)$ , gives the inequality, where  $\Pi(0) = 1$ . A three-input AND gate gives the intersection operation. Note, the biases,  $\theta$ , map a zero input to a nonzero output.



$$0(x_1, x_2) \in R$$

$$1(x_1, x_2) \in R$$

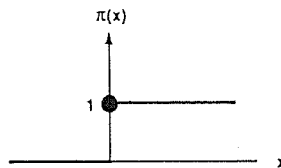


Figure 4.18 A network for a triangular region in two dimensions. Three inequalities, represented by the three paths in the network, define the region. The parameters,  $w_{11}, w_{12}, \theta_1$ , define one of three lines bounding the region. A unit step function,  $\pi(\cdot)$  defines the inequality. If the input point  $(x_1, x_2)$  lies in the region, the logic AND gate produces an output 1. Otherwise, the output is 0.

Figure 4.19 shows a NN implementing a three-input AND gate. The biases are in the interval  $[-3, -2)$ .

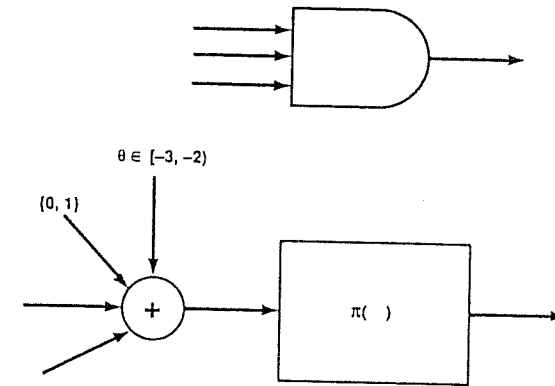


Figure 4.19 Perceptron implementation of a three-input logic AND gate. Inputs are 0 or 1. Because of a bias  $\theta$  in the range  $-3 \geq \theta < -2$  and a unit step function, the output is 1 if and only if all three inputs are 1. Otherwise, the output is 0.

Combining figures 4.18 and 4.19 gives a NN for 2-D triangular decision regions, shown in figure 4.20. Three layers can be identified: (1) an INPUT layer, (2) a PLANE layer, and (3) an AND layer. The AND layer is the OUTPUT layer for this NN. Figure 4.20 shows the neurons for each layer. By adding neurons to the PLANE layer, this NN is sufficient for every finite simply connected region.

A first extension is to arbitrarily shaped regions. First, assume two separate regions, shown in figure 4.21. Region  $R_1$  is a triangular region. Region  $R_2$  is a semi-infinite region to the left of two lines. Assume points in both regions belong to a region called  $R$ . Then, inequalities define  $R$  as

$$R = \{(x_1, x_2) | \bigcap_{j=1}^3 (w_{j1}x_1 + w_{j2}x_2 + \theta_j > 0) \cup (\bigcap_{j=4}^5 (w_{j1}x_1 + w_{j2}x_2 + \theta_j > 0))\} \tag{4.113}$$

where  $\cup$  is the logical OR (union) operation.

Figure 4.21 shows a NN implementing (4.113). The OR gate is simply a summation with a smaller bias than for an AND gate.

In figure 4.22, four layers define an arbitrary decision region. The OR layer acts as the OUTPUT layer. Moreover, no classification task takes more than four layers (two hidden layers), because every expression in mathematical logic is expressible in conjunction normal form.

While four layers are enough for an arbitrary nonconvex region, in general the minimum layers may be less than four. The AND-OR layers can often be combined in a single layer consisting of a bias and a summation.

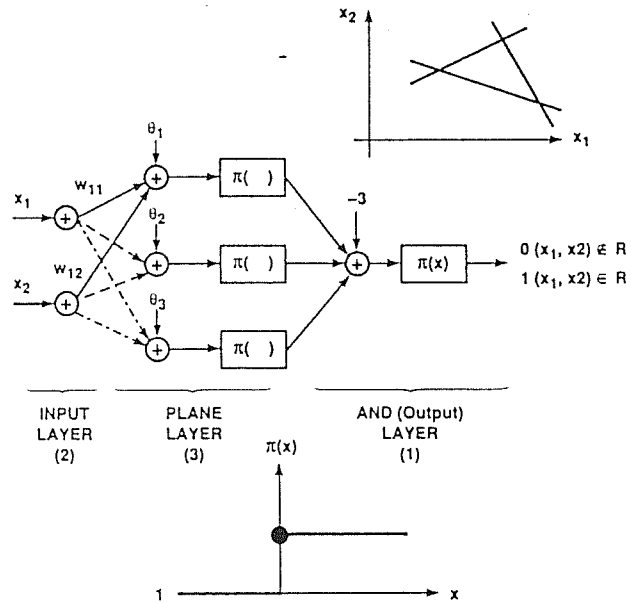


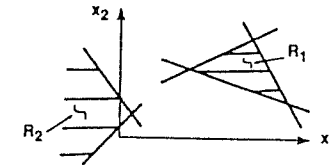
Figure 4.20 A perceptron for a triangular region in two dimensions. Each summing node-step function represents an idealized neuron (node), which first multiplies inputs by the weights and then if above a threshold, produces an output 1. As shown, this example has six nodes and three layers. The first layer is the input layer. The second layer, called the plane layer, defines lines (planes) bounding the region. The third layer, called the AND layer, has the logic AND and is also the output layer.

Figure 4.23 shows a nonconvex region realized by three layers using appropriate biases and weights [50]. For 2-D this simplification can be frequently found. Simplification with higher dimensional inputs is more difficult. And while three-layer NNs are possible, equivalent four-layer NNs are easily constructed and interpreted.

A second extension is discriminating many classes.

Figure 4.24 shows the decision regions for three classes. Define each class by the INPUT-PLANE-AND-OUTPUT(OR) architecture. By this approach, three classes (and their negation) lead to three neurons in the OUTPUT layer.

A third extension is to higher dimensional inputs. Figure 4.25 shows a slab in 3-D space, specified by two inequalities. A 3-D cube is the intersection (AND) of three slabs. Thus, a cubic decision region in 3-D input space leads to the network shown in figure 4.26. To define the decision region, fix the weights and adjust the biases. Extension to higher



$$R = \{(x_1, x_2) \mid \bigcap_{j=1}^3 (w_{j1}x_1 + w_{j2}x_2 + \theta_j > 0) \cup \bigcap_{j=4}^5 (w_{j1}x_1 + w_{j2}x_2 + \theta_j > 0)\}$$

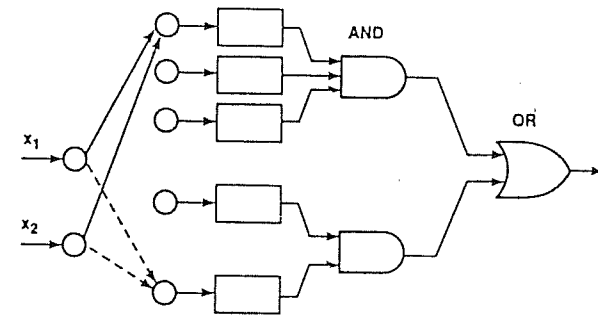


Figure 4.21 A network for two regions,  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ .  $R_1$  is a triangular region defined as in figure 4.20.  $R_2$  is a semi-infinite region defined by two lines, or two paths in the network. If the input point  $(x_1, x_2)$  lies in either region, the logic OR gate produces 1. Otherwise, the output is 0.

dimensional decision regions is direct and involves the intersection of planes defined in the input space.

The XOR problem is historically significant in perceptron theory. Minsky and Papert [71] critiqued the two-layer perceptron on its failure to solve the XOR problem. To the author's knowledge, however, this multilayer perceptron theory was not known when the objection was made.

Figure 4.27 shows the XOR problem in the present notation. The XOR operator classifies points  $(1,0)$  and  $(0,1)$  as "one" and other points as "zero." A NN defines regions containing  $(1,0)$  and  $(0,1)$ . Figure 4.28 shows square regions around the points. The decision region,  $R$ , consists of  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ . That is,

$$R = \{(x_1, x_2) \mid (x_1, x_2) \in R_1 \cup (x_1, x_2) \in R_2\}. \tag{4.114}$$

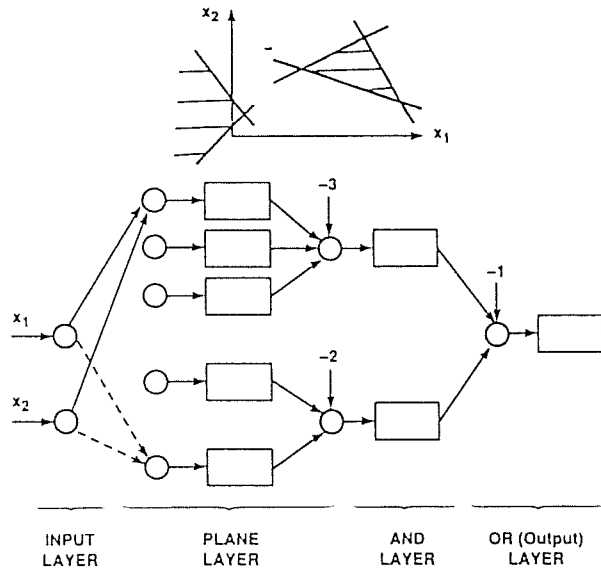


Figure 4.22 A perceptron for the region shown in figure 4.21. For clarity some connections are not shown. A node with threshold  $-2$  implements the two-input logic OR gate. In general, four layers is the maximum number of layers needed for an input space, although fewer layers are sometimes adequate (see figure 4.23).

In the notation of figure 4.28, (4.114) becomes

$$R = \{(x_1, x_2) \mid (x_1 > 1 - \epsilon \cap x_1 > 1 + \epsilon \cap x_2 > -\epsilon \cap x_2 < \epsilon) \cup (x_1 > -\epsilon \cap x_1 < \epsilon \cap x_2 > 1 - \epsilon \cap x_2 > 1 + \epsilon)\}. \quad (4.115)$$

Figure 4.29 shows a NN implementation of (4.114). As seen, the NN needs 13 neurons in four layers.

Figure 4.30 shows a simpler XOR solution. The decision region is defined by two lines. The NN has five neurons in three layers.

Thus, a solution to XOR depends on how the output is defined for inputs not 0 or 1. So the XOR solution is not unique, and many solutions are possible.

The geometric description of perceptrons suggests many learning algorithms. Two simple self-learning algorithms follow. Assume a 2-D input space. A simple algorithm uses a set of training points to define a rectangular decision region for class 1. Figure 4.31 shows implementing this region with four neurons with fixed known weights. The biases are adjusted to enclose the region.

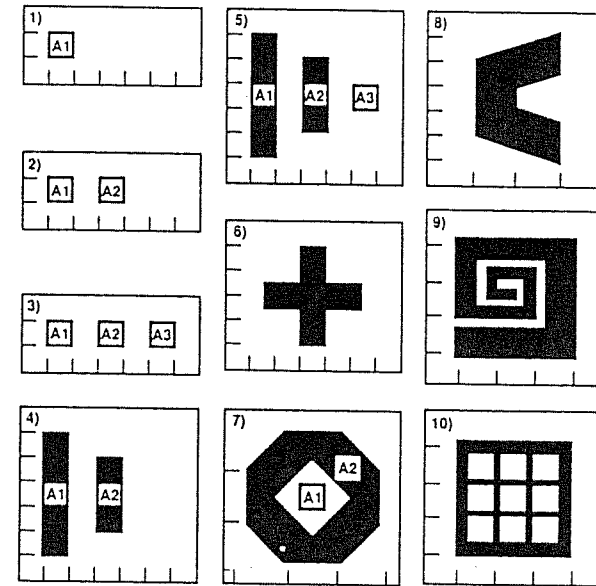
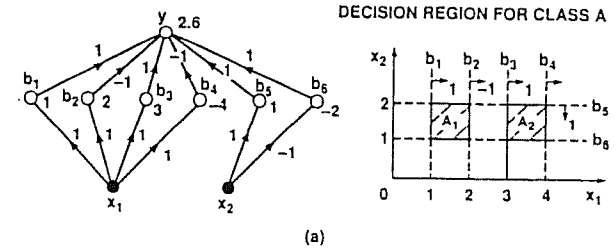


Figure 4.23 (a) A three-layer perceptron forming disjoint regions for class  $A$  (shaded areas). The left part shows connection weights and node biases. Dashed lines show the lines formed by nodes. Arrows point to the half plane where the node outputs are 1. (b) Ten example regions formed by three-layer perceptrons.

Let the set  $\{x_1(k), x_2(k)\}$  with  $k = 1, \dots, N$  be  $N$  training points. The biases  $\theta_1, \theta'_1, \dots, \theta_4, \theta'_4$  are from

$$\theta_1 = \max_k \{x_1(k)\} \quad (4.116)$$

and

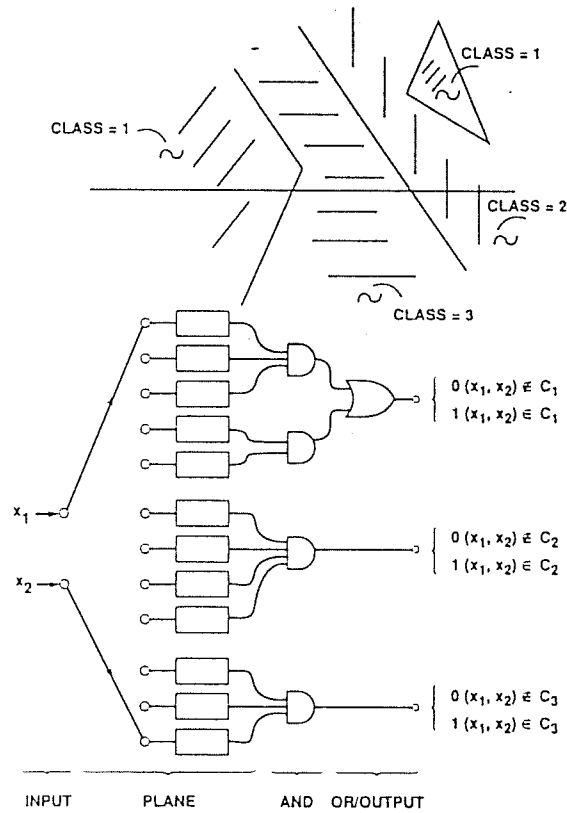


Figure 4.24 A network for two-dimensional inputs, multiple decision regions, and three classes, illustrating extension of network in figure 4.21.

$$\theta_1^i = \min_k \{x_1(k)\}. \tag{4.117}$$

To implement (4.116) in a recursive way, assume  $\theta_1(k+1)$  is from the inequalities

$$x_1(k) - \theta_1(k) \begin{cases} > 0, & \theta_1(k+1) = x_1(k) \\ \leq 0, & \theta_1(k+1) = \theta_1(k). \end{cases} \tag{4.118}$$

Equivalently,  $\theta_1(k)$  is by

$$\theta_1(k+1) = y\theta_1(k) + (1-y)x_1(k), \tag{4.119}$$

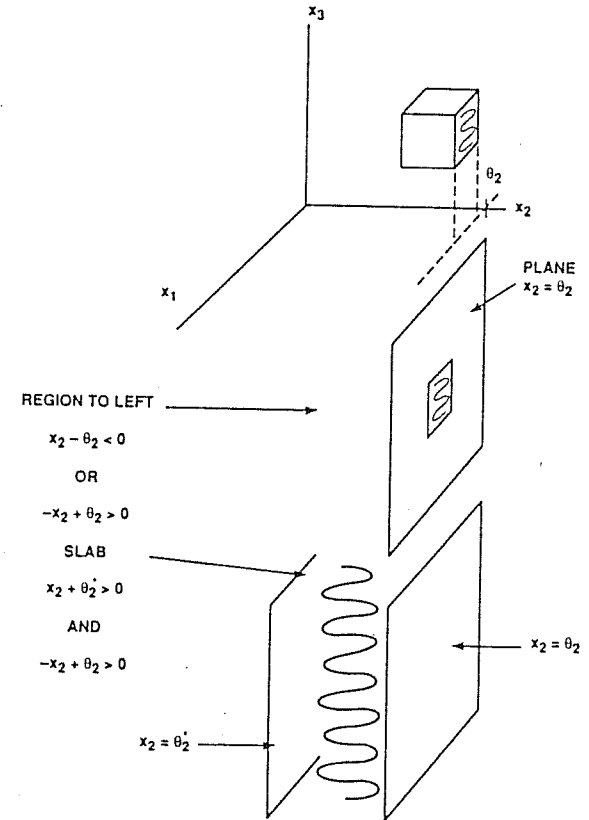


Figure 4.25 Specifying three-dimensional slabs. Replacing the equal sign by an inequality in the equation for a plane that is perpendicular to a coordinate axis defines a volume to the left or right. Combining two inequalities defines a slab.

where

$$y = \Pi(-x_1 + \theta_1). \tag{4.120}$$

Figure 4.32 shows computing  $y$  by the system, then computing  $\theta_1(k+1)$  by a first-order feedback system. This approach leads to a learning feedback system, shown in figure 4.33.

Another self-learning strategy is to bound a simply connected decision region by straight lines produced in a stepwise fashion. Figure 4.34 shows the idea. Start with three points to form a triangle. Add a fourth training point. If the fourth point is in the triangle,

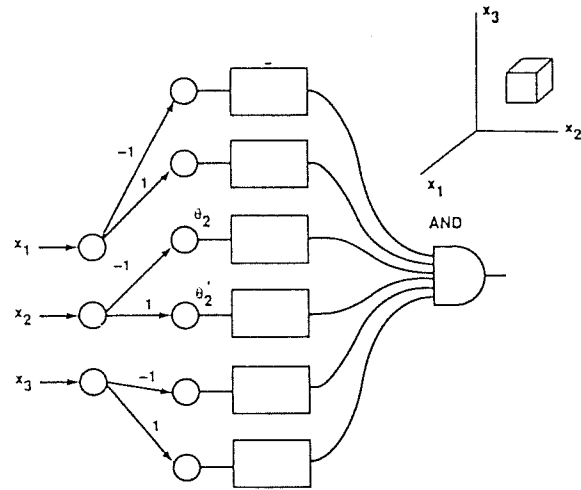


Figure 4.26 A network for a paralleloiped region in three dimensions. As shown, the thresholds define the sides. The logic AND gate has six inputs. All inputs must be 1 if the input point  $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$  lies in the region.

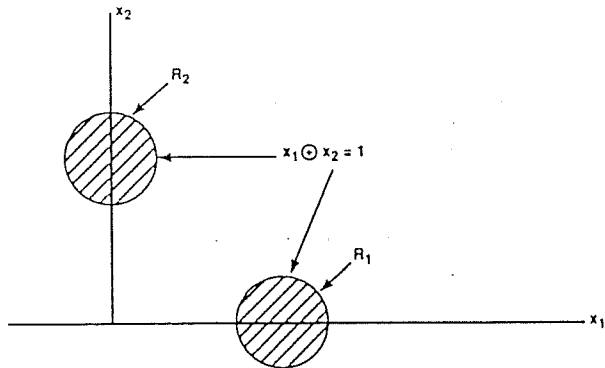
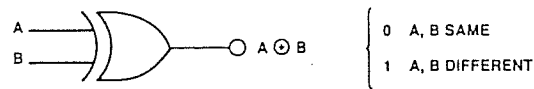


Figure 4.27 XOR definition. The logic XOR gate produces 0 if all inputs are the same. Otherwise, it produces 1. For two dimensions, define regions  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  as shown. For an XOR network, inputs lying in  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  produce 1.

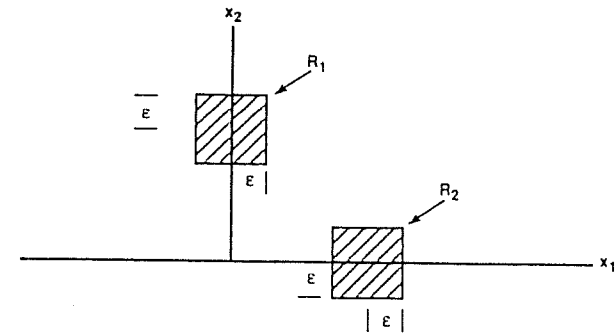


Figure 4.28 Decision region for the XOR problem illustrating regions  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  defined by lines perpendicular to the coordinate axes.

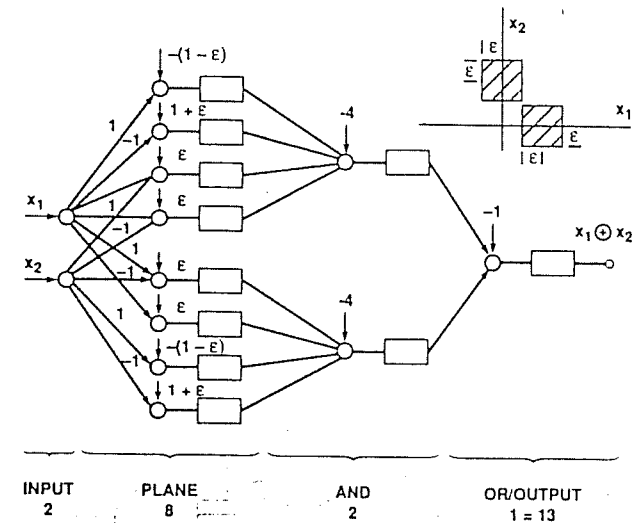


Figure 4.29 A perceptron for the XOR problem with regions from figure 4.28. The network has 13 nodes arranged in four layers.

no change is made. If the point is outside the triangle, change the region to four-sided by adding another neuron.

The decision region changes to that shown in figure 4.35. As more points are added, there is a neuron in the second layer for every line. The lower figure shows alternate decision regions for the same training set. That is, the solution is not unique.

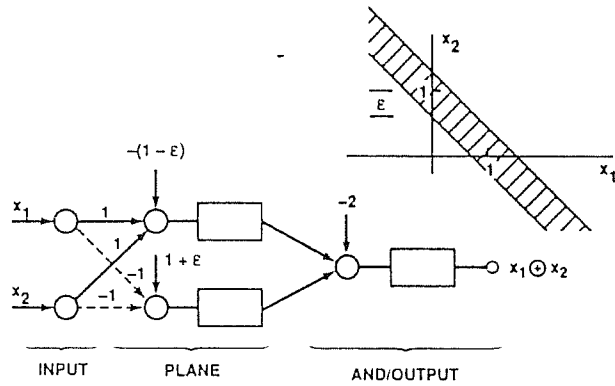


Figure 4.30 A perceptron for the XOR problem with regions defined by two lines. The network has five nodes arranged in three layers.

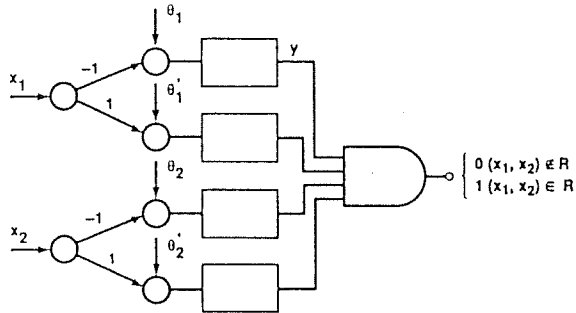
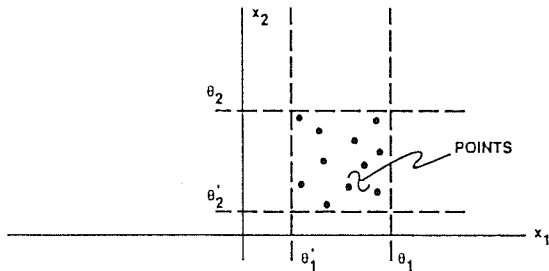
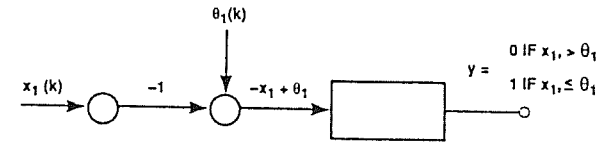


Figure 4.31 A simple two-dimensional region enclosing a set of points and the corresponding network. The biases define the lines.

$$\theta_1 = \max_k \{x_1(k)\}$$

$$\theta_1' = \min_k \{x_1(k)\}$$

$$x_1(k) - \theta_1(k) \begin{cases} > 0, \theta_1(k+1) = x_1(k) \\ < 0, \theta_1(k+1) = \theta_1(k) \end{cases}$$



$$y = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{IF } x_1 > \theta_1 \\ 1 & \text{IF } x_1 \leq \theta_1 \end{cases}$$

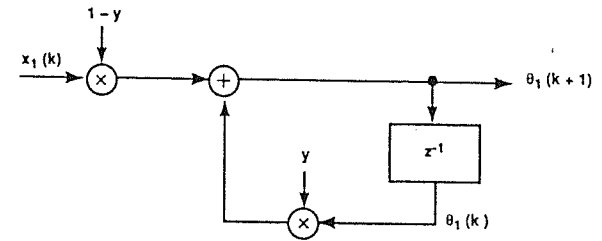


Figure 4.32 Update system illustrating simple feedback to adjust biases. An input  $x_1$  at time index  $k$ ,  $x_1(k)$  produces output  $y$ , shown in figure 4.31. The input  $x_1(k)$  is also sent to another system to produce the updated bias  $\theta_1(k+1)$ .

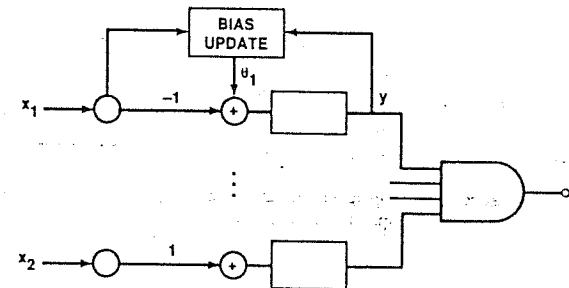


Figure 4.33 Combining networks of figures 4.31 and 4.32 gives a network that automatically adjusts biases. During a training period, an input dataset passes through the system to set the biases. After training, the perceptron classifies other inputs.

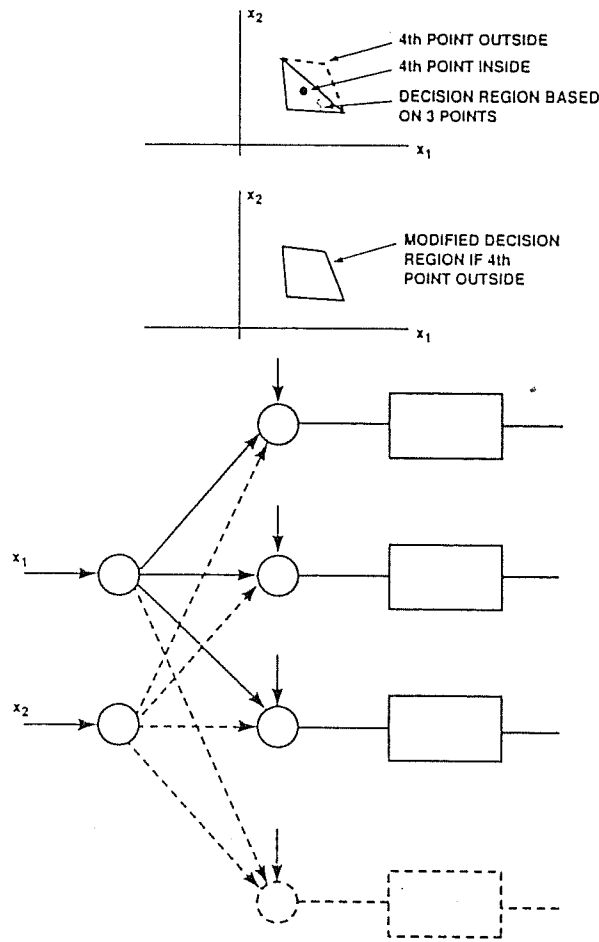


Figure 4.34 A perceptron that adjusts the nodes in the plane layer. During training on an input dataset, if a, say, fourth point lies outside of the region for a class, the output is 0. Adding another node to the plane layer changes the region, as shown.

Figure 4.36 summarizes the general structure of perceptrons. That is, the architecture consists of four layers: INPUT-PLANE-AND-OUTPUT(OR). Two layers are hidden. Three layers have coefficients defining one or more decision regions. Figure 4.36 shows the neurons in each layer.

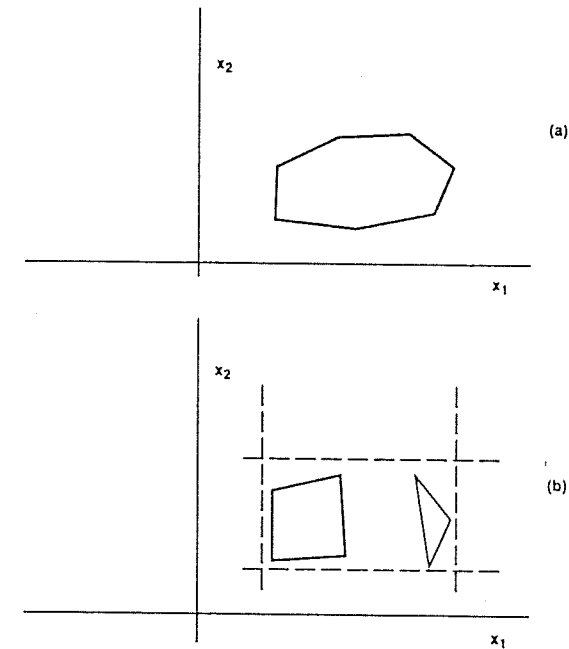


Figure 4.35 Evolution of the region with more training inputs. (a) Adding nodes to the plane layer produces a region bounded by lines. (b) Alternatively, with the same training dataset, adjusting the biases produces a region with sides perpendicular to the coordinate axes.

Currently, the most widely used method of setting the weights and biases is the generalized delta algorithm known as backpropagation [79, ch. 8]. In the backpropagation algorithm, the weights and biases in the three adjustable layers (PLANE-AND-OR) are set to small random values at first. A training set recursively adjusts the weights. Practice shows many iterations are needed. For example, a three-layer NN (one hidden layer) with 15-30-1 neurons typically needs over 100,000 iterations before reaching steady state.

The geometric viewpoint, however, suggests prior knowledge about the classification problem can structure the NN, estimate coefficients, and develop new learning algorithms. (For a related approach, see [10] which describes using Voronoi diagrams—a partition of the space into convex regions.)

Finally, other extensions, not discussed, include use of sigmoid rather than step functions, and nonlinear functions of the input coordinates to form, say, spherical decision regions. Indeed, the geometric viewpoint gives a convenient baseline for understanding perceptron NNs and further work.



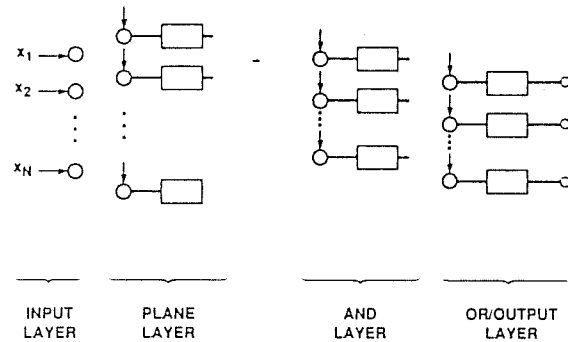


Figure 4.36 General structure of perceptrons in four layers. While algorithms, such as backpropagation, can define biases and weights in each layer, insight into the application may produce a perceptron design faster and better.

### SUGGESTED REFERENCES

- B. KOSKO, *Unsupervised Learning in Noise*. This paper considers the stability of neural networks when structure is perturbed. Structural stability may be affected by thermal noise processes, electromagnetic interactions, and component failures. The stability properties can also be affected by unmodeled electrochemical and molecular processes in, say, synapses. The paper considers adaptive and nonadaptive neural networks, such as ART-2 and Hopfield NNs. One result is that if the processes ignored in the state equations produce a net random effect, their effect is unimportant to the global computations.
- W. BROGAN, *Modern Control Theory*. Many elaborate treatises exist on temporal stability. Chapter 14 of this reference is a good summary. Section 14.6 contains material on the Lyapunov method.
- G. CARPENTER AND S. GROSSBERG, *A Massively Parallel Architecture for a Self-Organizing Neural Pattern Recognition Machine*. References in previous chapters discuss the ART NNs. Indeed, the ART literature is rapidly increasing. Nearly every book on neural networks devotes some time to it. This paper is well known, and it is the fullest exposition of ART-1. It treats many advanced topics. A set of theorems summarize ART-1 properties. For example, a theorem shows that the order of input patterns is unimportant in training ART-1. Moreover, the coding is stable, with the LTM traces oscillating at most once because of learning. The paper gives an example of learning alphabet symbols.
- R. LIPPMANN, *Introduction to Computing with Neural Networks*. This overview article discusses ART-1. It describes results from MIT Lincoln Laboratory studies. After training on "perfect inputs," if a noisy input is applied, the ART-1 will classify it with a similar example. Updating the LTM then degrades this LTM. More noisy inputs cause further growth of noisy LTMs. Possible improvements include adapting the LTM more slowly, or changing the vigilance.
- S. GROSSBERG, *Studies of Mind and Brain*. ART was originated by Grossberg. Carpenter and Grossberg and others then developed ART NNs to the point where they are some of the most powerful known. Chapter 1 of this reference discusses the modeling with ART of environmentally driven and behaviorally meaningful code development.

- G. CARPENTER AND S. GROSSBERG, *ART 2: Self-Organization of Stable Category Recognition Codes for Analog Input Patterns*. This is the best treatment of the ART-2 algorithm, and it is a classic paper in the field. It contains much information, especially the parameter sensitivity studies.
- J. HOPFIELD, *Neural Networks and Physical Systems with Emergent Collective Computational Abilities*. This is a NN classic. The paper discusses associative memory by systems with many simple components (neurons). Hopfield and his associates developed this class of NNs and applied it to problems such as the traveling salesman problem. The major impact of the paper, however, was in producing interest in the field, which led to more powerful NNs.
- K. PASSINO, *Neural Computing for Numeric-to-Symbolic Conversion in Control Systems*. Perceptrons have many applications. In this paper a perceptron is a numeric-to-symbolic convert for a discrete-event system controller. The controller supervises a continuous variable dynamic system. Several examples are given. The paper sets the biases and weights as described in the text. In this paper the technique is referred to as "Harvey's method." The method is an alternative way to speed up the well-known backpropagation algorithm.

### EXERCISES

- Assume the following:
  - An ART-1 neural network with  $M = 3$ ,  $N = 5$ , shown in figure 4.37.
  - A set of consistent parameters and choose an initial set of LTMs.
  - Training inputs  $I(1) = (110)$ ,  $I(2) = (011)$ .
  - Fast learning and other parameters.
 Compute the LTMs after a single training sequence cycle. What are the classifications of  $I(3) = (100)$ ,  $I(4) = (001)$ , and  $I(5) = (010)$ ?
- What are the classifications of  $I(3) = (100)$ ,  $I(4) = (001)$ , and  $I(5) = (010)$  after this training sequence?
- Let  $I_i$  be the  $i$ th input to ART-2. Assume zero top-down LTM trace. Find the noise threshold that attenuates  $I_i$ .
- Let a saw-tooth input be presented to ART-2 varying between  $I_1$  and  $I_2$ , with  $I_1 < I_2$ . Find the ratio  $I_2/I_1$  so  $I_1$  is stored as zero.
- Show that multiples of the input to ART-2 are indistinguishable.
- Show how the magnitude of the LTM trace varies with input pattern length.
- Consider a medical diagnosis application of ART-2. Assume there are 25 characteristics, each with 5 values or levels, which are collected during interviews and observations of a patient. Assume some characteristics are critical for making a correct diagnosis, while some characteristics are not applicable for particular diagnoses. Design, describe the training, and outline the use of an ART-2 that recognizes patterns of input characteristics in 5 diagnostic categories (see [43] for a nursing diagnosis example). How could the system be updated with new information? How could the system be verified (algorithm correct), validated (agrees with reality), and accredited (accepted for use by practitioners)?
- Design a Hopfield associative memory to store two memories,  $I(1) = (110)$  and  $I(2) = (011)$ .
- Show  $I(1)$  and  $I(2)$  are stable points.
- Let  $I(3) = (100)$ . Show it relaxes to  $I(1)$ .
- Design a multilayer perceptron to classify  $I(1) = (110)$  and  $I(2) = (011)$  in different categories.
- Let  $I(3) = (100)$ . In what category is  $I(3)$  classified?

# Vision Systems

The first four chapters presented elementary NN modules. In the lateral interaction modules, we have controllers, feature detectors, and front-end processors. In the perceptron networks, we have simple classifiers. And in the ART networks, we have general memory units. This chapter applies these elementary modules to design machine vision systems that roughly model biology.

## 5.1 OVERVIEW OF HUMAN VISION

The plan of this chapter is to approach vision from a biological point of view. This section summarizes primate vision.

Vision here means higher primate vision, especially human vision. Although data are available for several species, many results come from the macaque monkey, an animal with visual capabilities like those of human beings. In comparison, the vision systems for creatures lower than primates differ significantly from primate vision.

The visual pathway from the eye goes to the visual cortex in two steps, shown in figure 5.1. The output from each retina divides at the optic chiasm and ends on neurons in the lateral geniculate nucleus (LGN). In turn the LGN axons project along the optic radiation to the visual cortex.

Table 1.5 summarizes characteristics of human vision. The retina has about  $1.25 \times 10^8$  receptors. Processing in the retina compresses the data about 125 to 1. Thus, the resolution near fovea, the most sensitive part of the retina, is about  $1000 \times 1000$  pixels.

The relative discrimination to brightness variations is 570 "just noticeable differences." Discrimination of frequency variations is 128 "just noticeable differences."

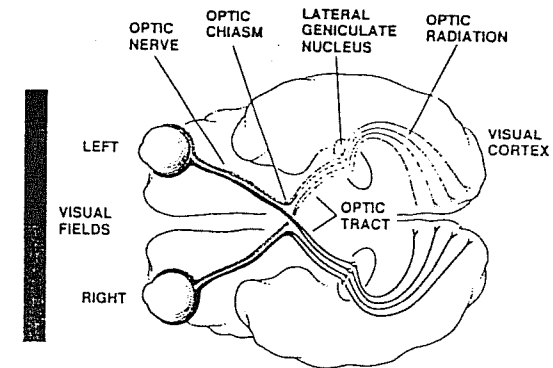


Figure 5.1 The underview of the human brain showing the visual pathways. For each retina, half of the axons go to the right tract, and the other half go to the left tract. (From Kuffler, et al. *From Neuron to Brain*. Reprinted by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc., 1984).

The field of view (FOV) of each pixel is about 0.5 minutes of arc (8 millidegrees) at fovea with good contrast and brightness [51, p. 45]. Thus, the FOV of each eye for the highest acuity is 500 minutes of arc, or  $8.3^\circ$ . Moreover, the eyes can track with a precision of about 1 minute of arc [51, p. 34].

Assuming typical values of 7 bits per pixel and a 100 Hz pulse frequency along the optic nerve, the data rate to the visual cortex is about 700 Mb/s, less than the capacity of current fiber optic channels.

Pathway characteristics of key brain areas in vision, shown in figure 5.2, are as follows. Research shows vision involves at least a dozen cortical areas in primates [83, p. 371]. Moreover, the vision system has a hierarchical structure. That is, researchers can assign distinct processing levels to the modules making up the system. (Deductively, there is no reason to expect such organization. For example, the brain could be a complex network without distinct hierarchical levels [83, p. 371].)

Researchers have mapped over 30 pathways among vision-related areas. The number of actual pathways is probably much larger because many connections have not been studied. A basic finding is that most pathways connect the areas in reciprocal fashion [83, p. 371].

For the dozen visual areas, the overall cortical hierarchy has six levels. Researchers constructed the hierarchy by assigning each area to a level just above the highest area providing an input [83, p. 372]. The procedure leads to the six levels.

Architectural characteristics of vision processing are as follows. Anatomical, behavioral, and physiological data reveal two distinct channels for locating and classifying, shown in figure 5.2 by the dotted line and the X-Y pathways. The two channels separate at the retina and have separate retinal detector cells, labeled X and Y. They remain separate at the cortical and midbrain levels.

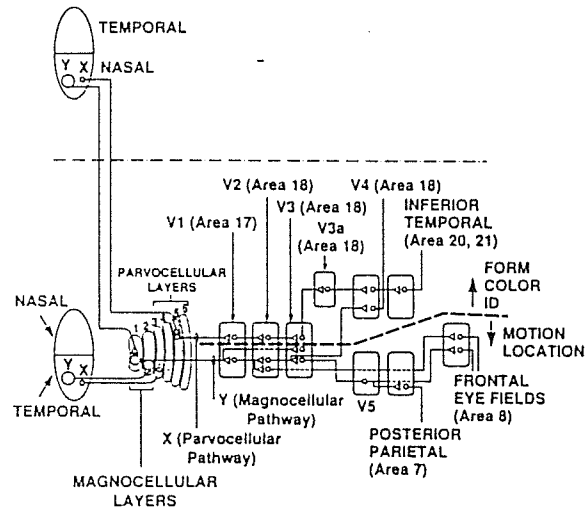


Figure 5.2 Schematic of visual projections to the brain areas involved in vision. (From Kandel and Schwartz. *Principles of Neural Science*. Adapted, with permission, from the *Annual Review of Neuroscience* Vol. 2, 1979, E. Kandel, and Appleton & Lange, 1985).

Evidence shows the classification channel analyzes form and color. The location channel analyzes visual motion across the FOV [85, p. 372].

The X-cells go to the classification channel [5, p. 353]. They are medium-sized cells with small optical fields which give high acuity and comparatively slow response times.

The Y-cells go to the location channel. They are big cells with large optical fields which give low acuity and fast response times.

(The W-cells, a third kind of retinal cell, go to the midbrain areas. The W-cells have small fields. They coordinate the FOV to head and eye movements. The population distribution is about 50 percent for X, 5 percent for Y, and 45 percent for W.)

The classification channel works as follows. The classification channel starts at the X-cells of the retina. The channel then goes to the retinal ganglion cell (RGC). It continues to the LGN, to the primary visual cortex (V1—also called area 17), and the secondary visual cortex (V2–V5—also called area 18). It then goes to the inferior temporal cortex (ITC—also called areas 20 and 21).

The visual pathway maps the FOV seen by the eyes onto V1. The mapping to V1 impresses the FOV on the fourth layer—of six layers—of the cortex sheet. The mapping is continuous, has the well-known logarithmic distortion near fovea, and rotates the external image about the horizontal axis, as shown next.

Figures 5.3 and 5.4 illustrate the mapping of the external FOV onto V1. In figure 5.3 (top), the external image has horizontal and vertical lines with a circle around the origin.

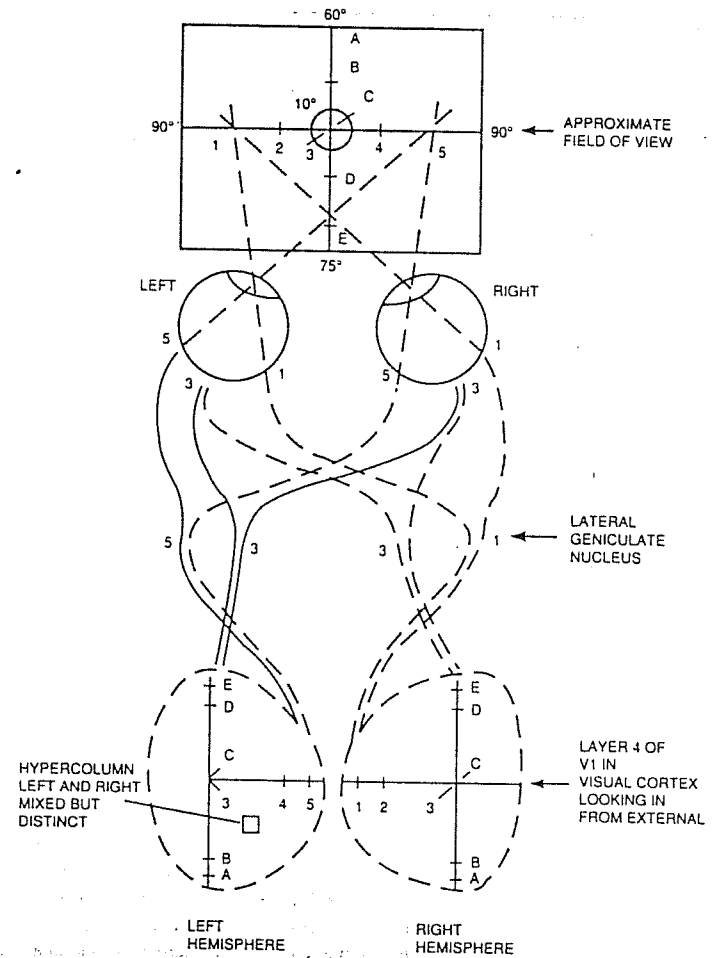


Figure 5.3 Retinotopic mapping of the visual field of view to the striate cortex. The mapping distorts and rotates the image about the horizontal axis. The right-eye view corresponds to the left cortex hemisphere, and vice versa. Distortion causes magnification near fovea. (Adapted from Frisby, 1980)

The figure numbers positions 1 through 5 along the horizontal line. The figure also marks positions A through E along the vertical. The circle has a radius of 8°, the FOV for highest acuity without moving the eyes.

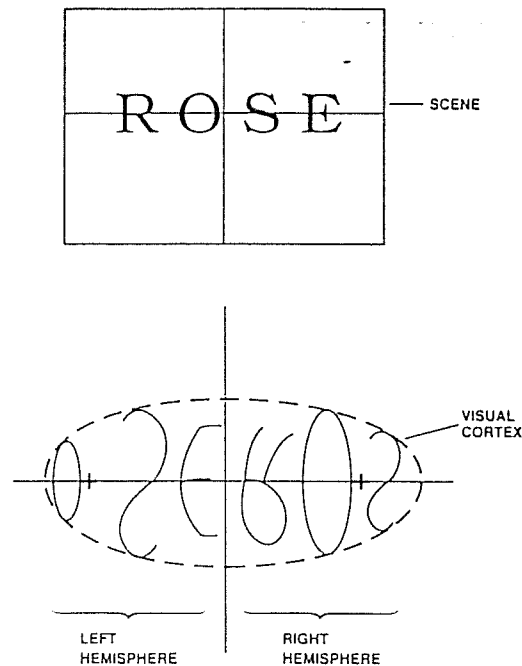


Figure 5.4 Example of the retinotopic mapping. The retinal image maintains its structure as the pathways transfer the pattern of stimulation from the retina to the striate cortex.

In figure 5.3 (bottom), crossover connections map the right-hand FOV of the two eyes to the left-side of V1 (as seen from the rear of the head). The mapping also interlaces the images from the two eyes. The images remain separate. Similarly, crossover connections map the left-hand FOV of the two eyes to the right-side of V1. The mapping also rotates the image about the horizontal axis.

Figure 5.3 shows magnification of the image. The mapping expands the region near the fovea, the region of highest acuity. For example, the distance from 3 to 4 and from 4 to 5 are equal in the external image. In V1 the distance from 3 to 4 is greater than from 4 to 5. Similarly, remarks hold for distances along the vertical.

Figure 5.4 shows the mapping of a word and the mapping of radial and circular lines. The mapping distorts and rotates the V1 image for a single eye. Circles in the external image get mapped to near vertical lines, and external radial lines get mapped to near horizontal lines. Measurements show the mapping is like a complex logarithm function.

The vision feature detectors work as follows. Areas V1, V2, and V3 function as feature detectors. As discovered by Hubel and Weisel (1955) [51], the features give contour and orientation information about the pattern.

Researchers have measured the response of individual cells (neurons) along the classification channel to external images [51, p. 69]. In the retina and LGN, the response is

on-center/off-surround or off-center/on-surround. In V1, three cell types have been found: simple, complex, and hypercomplex.

Simple cells respond to stationary edges, slits, or lines in the external image at precise orientation angles. In human beings the angular resolution between two straight lines is about  $10^\circ$  [30, p. 48]. Interpolation allows discrimination between two lines differing by about  $3^\circ$ . A stationary line must be carefully oriented and positioned to produce a response from a simple cell.

The receptive field of a V1 neuron is a small area of the retina on which light must fall to affect the neuron. At fovea simple cells have receptive fields measuring about  $\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  by  $\frac{1}{4}^\circ$ . At the periphery, the receptive field size is about  $1^\circ$  by  $1^\circ$ .

Complex cells respond to moving edges, slits, or lines in a precise direction. About 75 percent of cells in V1 are complex [51, p. 74]. The receptive field of complex cells is slightly larger than that for simple cells. Near fovea the receptive field size is about  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  by  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ .

Hypercomplex cells respond if one or two ends of a line stop in the receptive area. If the line goes through the receptive area without stopping, the hypercomplex cell response goes to 0 or to a constant value.

Summarizing the feature detectors, the features in primate vision are stationary or moving edges, slots, or lines. In comparison, these are not the features commonly used in current machine vision (MV) algorithms. Typical features in MV algorithms are corners, faces, frequencies, or responses of matched filters.

(Although a global Fourier transformed by the visual cortex was hypothesized erroneously, research shows a local spatial frequency analysis starting in the striate cortex [60,74]. This analysis is done by interactions among adjacent simple cells.)

The ITC (areas 20 and 21) in the classification channel works like a classifier. The ITC output goes to higher level centers of logic and emotion [53, ch. 5]. The location channel works as follows.

A location channel starts at the Y-cells of the retina. The channel goes through the midbrain areas to the superior colliculus (SC) and then to the pulvinar nucleus (PT). It then goes to the posterior parietal (PP). The output of this channel goes to the frontal eye fields (area 8). Evidence suggests this system is responsible for location analyses of objects in the FOV.

Interconnections link the classification and location channels. The SC projects directly to the ITC, bypassing the rest of the main route. The PT projects to the secondary visual cortices and to the ITC. The classification channel also passes data to the location channel by paths from V1 to the SC and to the PT [53, p. 101].

Considering the system as a whole, researchers believe it works as follows. Retinal images send data for pattern analysis by the classification channel. The classifying system passes the data from RGC to LGN to V1, then through paths in V2, V3, V4, and V5, and then to the ITC.

At the same time, retinal images pass through midbrain routes that locate objects and analyze spatial relations and motion. Moreover, the location system interacts with the pattern analysis system at most steps along the route. Key interactions occur in the location visual cortex for constructing spatial relations [53, p. 101].

Besides the level scheme, a relationship exists between the level and the receptive field size.

Receptive fields are smallest in VI. The fields increase in size at successive levels of the hierarchy [83, p. 372]. Researchers also found that receptive field parameters—size, shape, and location—vary [53, ch. 5]. That is, a mechanism, probably presynaptic inhibition, adaptively adjusts a feature detecting cell. (Presynaptic inhibition is a mechanism that acts to turn off selected inputs to a neuron—see chapter 2.)

Presynaptic inhibition in the feature detection stages changes the shape and location of the receptive field. Under normal conditions, stimulating the ITC changes the receptive fields of area VI, suggesting that the ITC may exert feedback control over the feature detectors. Moreover, emotional states also alter the receptive fields.

Thus, recognition is likely an active feedback process that restructures the feature extraction stages. That is, feedforward and feedback signals continue until matching an input and some known class of stimulus [53, p. 108].

Recognition starts with standard receptive fields. If matching by the ITC fails, feedback shifts the processes in the preceding stages to extract features for another object class.

Research also suggests a mechanism for directing attention to selected locations in the FOV. In short, windowing occurs.

Windowing focuses on small details and ends notice of other objects in the FOV. Researchers suspect that the midbrain directs this process, perhaps cued by cortical inputs.

The vision system has other inputs besides those from the retina. Signals from the motor systems give data about eye position. Moreover, inputs from the frontal cortex may be the source of selective attention. These attention inputs direct goal-related processes.

Visual memory is another source of input, which may improve the search strategy in the perceptual analysis [53, p. 132].

Research shows considerable use of feedforward signals. Outputs of the visual front end supply a variety of later stages. Indeed, the higher processing levels may tap the early stages for simple data, such as overall brightness.

Output from each stage of processing is probably available to all parts of the system. The primary cortex, however, gives information about the detailed nature of the visual field and its spatial structure. The primary cortex does not analyze patterns into objects. To organize patterns, the higher levels draw on experience, that is memory.

After visual processing, the brain uses outputs from the visual system throughout. One area records visual objects (memory). Another area organizes a logical world model from experience and sensory inputs (cognition). Yet another area responds emotionally to perceived objects (motivation) [53, ch. 5].

The system is asynchronous, that is, it has no master clock. The system is a serial-parallel, analog, asynchronous, real-time computing machine. In comparison man-made computers are mostly serial, digital, synchronous, and off-line.

The system continually updates on each pathway. Thus, there will be differences among the modules in the processing time, in the spatial relations of FOV objects, and in the external representation of the external world. In short, spatial-temporal smearing occurs (see chapter 9 for further discussion).

In practice the longest times are a fraction of a second, roughly, the characteristic visual interaction time with the outside world.

Summarizing the above description, figure 5.5 shows a block diagram of the brain's visual processing. The system is a sensor-preprocessor-feature-extracting-classifier system. A small number of serial stages move large arrays of data. In each stage the processing is heavily parallel. Feedforward and feedback pathways connect the modules.

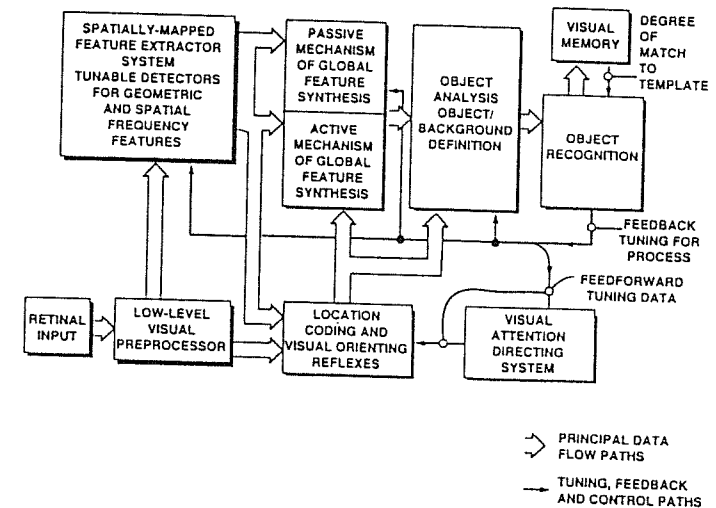


Figure 5.5 A block diagram of the vision system containing modules. (From Kent. *The Brains of Men and Machines*. Reprinted with permission of E. Kent, 1981).

## 5.2 AN ARCHITECTURE FOR MACHINE VISION

Research suggests that the advantages of biological vision over current MV are from feedback, flexible control, and the kinds of feature detectors. This section describes an example general purpose MV system having some of these biological characteristics.

The purpose of the system is to find and identify spatial patterns of luminance in the FOV. The term "general purpose" means recognizing objects of different classes without changing the algorithm. Applying the system means setting a few sensitivity parameters and training by examples.

The design method is to model the human vision system. The functions of the modules approximate those of the human brain. For convenience, implementation in a testbed (described below) uses a mixture of NNs and standard processing algorithms.

The system recognizes gray images in the FOV, with arbitrary translations and rotations. It does not emulate certain biological characteristics. Not emulated are binocularity,

size invariance, motion perception, color sensitivity, and discernment of virtual boundaries. Indeed, many applications can omit these properties.

The architecture of the system has location and classification channels that work together. The location channel searches for objects of interest in the FOV and, after one is found, the classification channel classifies it.

The block diagram follows from biology (figure 5.6). The following paragraphs describe the functions of each module.

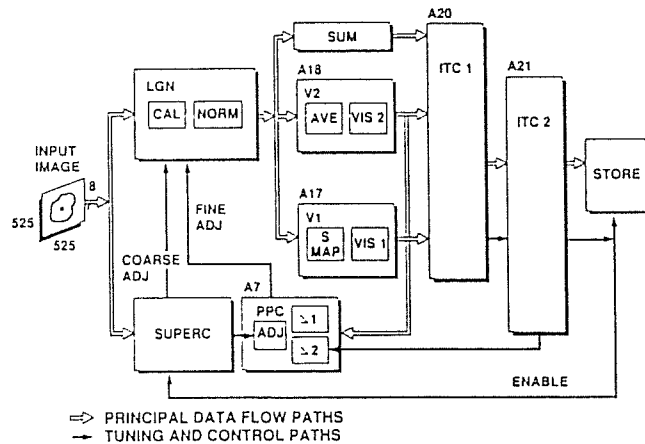


Figure 5.6 Block diagram of a neural network architecture for machine vision. A 525 × 525-pixel image with 8-bit pixels has been included at the left of the figure as an example input image.

To illustrate how the system works, the description carries through an example of a 525 × 525-pixel input image with 8-bit pixels. The example assumes objects of size 175 × 175 pixels appear in the input image. This object size corresponds to normal cells in a Pap smear image at ×400 magnification, discussed below.

1. **Classification Channel.** Some classification channel modules approximate the functioning of selected brain areas: the lateral geniculate nucleus (LGN), visual area 1 (V1, also called A17), visual area 2 (V2, also called A18), inferior temporal cortex 1 (ITC1, also called A20), and inferior temporal cortex 2 (ITC2, also called A21). Other modules approximate certain biological functions without the anatomical correspondence, such as the SUM module.

2. **LGN—Grayness Processing.** Figure 5.7 shows the front-end processing stages in the classification channel. The classification channel has feedforward and feedback signals. Signals flow from the input image through the feature extracting stages to ITC1 input.

The first module in the classification channel is the LGN. The LGN contains the CALIBRATE and NORMALIZATION boxes (figure 5.6).

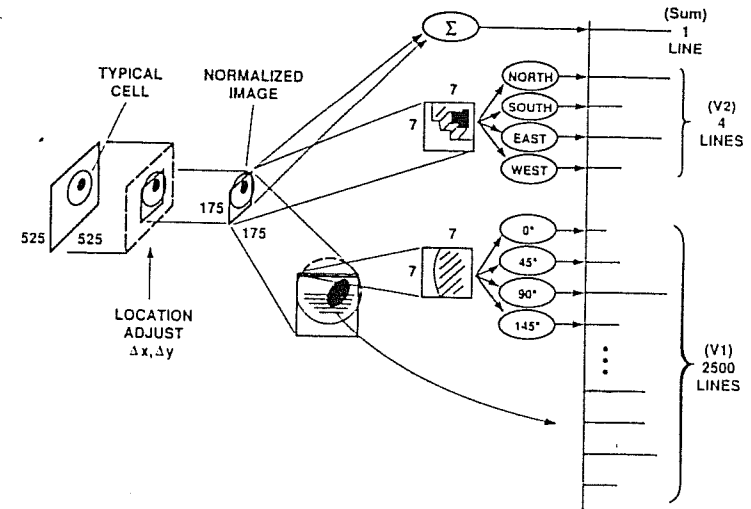


Figure 5.7 Summary of image processing operations. For the example of a 525 × 525-pixel input image, the classification channel places a window of 175 × 175-pixels around the object in the image. (The window size is set to fit the object size.) The 175 × 175 window is then broken into subwindows of 7 × 7 pixels to extract details of the image, and the details are stored in the feature vector.

The CALIBRATE and NORMALIZATION boxes handle the grayness and adjust for overall illumination in the FOV. These boxes decouple the image's grayness and illumination from the rest of the processing. The decoupling allows designing the remaining modules for pixel values lying in the range of 0 to 1.

Assume the location channel has found an object in the FOV (see below). The location channel sends the pattern's position to the LGN module (figure 5.7, bottom). In the example, the windowed image covers 175 × 175 pixels.

The CALIBRATE box computes a histogram of the windowed image. The testbed images have 8-bit pixels. Histograms of these images are often concentrated in a small band in the range from 0 to 255. Calibrating spreads the intensity values over the entire 0-to-255 range by linearly mapping the lower part to 0 and the upper part to 255.

The histogram's lower limit is the point where the cumulative count is 1 percent of the peak value. The upper limit is where the cumulative count exceeds 99.25 percent. These limits prevent outlying pixel values from affecting the histogram stretching factors.

The NORMALIZE box rescales the pixel values so that pixels leaving the LGN module are in the range from 0 to 1. The box divides the calibrated pixel values by 255.

3. **V1—High Resolution Features.** The first feature-generating module is A17 (or V1). It breaks the input window into subwindows of 7 × 7 pixels. Thus, the example

175 × 175-pixel window has 625 subwindows. Note that the 7 × 7 subwindow size is independent of the input image size.

SPIRAL MAP and VISAREA1 then process each 7 × 7 subwindow. SPIRAL MAP (figure 5.6) scans through the subwindows in a spiral pattern. The mapping proceeds left to right across the top row, down the right column, right to left across the bottom row, up the left column, back across the second row, and so on. The scanning ends at the center subwindow. The purpose of the spiral mapping is to simplify interpretation of the feature data.

VISAREA1 (figure 5.6) does the high-resolution feature extraction. It measures luminance gradients (increasing or decreasing) in four directions for each 7 × 7-pixel subwindow.

A gradient is a characteristic of gray images and is analogous to an edge in a binary image. The luminance gradient in the system is the rate of change, or slope, in brightness across a 7 × 7 subwindow.

Windows with an abrupt step in brightness in one direction have a large gradient in that direction. Windows with a gradual change in brightness from one side to the other have a small gradient. Windows with uniform brightness, that is, with no visible edges, have zero gradient.

The gradients usually differ because the luminance slope depends on direction. The system produces gradients in four directions—vertical, horizontal, and the 45° diagonals—for each 7 × 7 subwindow.

Figure 5.8 shows the operations for producing the four orientation features of each 7 × 7 subwindow. The system needs only two different NNs, with rotating and reflecting the input.

The gradient detectors in the system are CC NNs. In the testbed, these NNs have 25 hidden neurons and 1 output neuron. As suggested by biology [21], each neuron is excitatory or inhibitory, not both. Figure 5.9 illustrates this NN.

The gradient-measuring NNs give responses to selected patterns. Figure 5.10 shows the design patterns. Each feature detector NN has 1924 fixed interconnecting weights for the testbed.

A genetic algorithm technique computed the weights off-line (see chapter 7). The weights are fixed. Figure 5.11 shows the horizontal responses to the design patterns. Figure 5.12 shows the diagonal responses.

4. V2—Shape Features. The second feature-generating module is A18 (or V2). It detects edges near the perimeter of the input window. V2 is also part of the location channel (see below). Its output contains data about an object's general shape.

The AVERAGE box defocuses the image to produce a single 7 × 7 image, regardless of the size of the input image (figure 5.6). For the 175 × 175 input example, the defocusing averages over 25 × 25 input pixels to produce each output pixel. The averaging smears pattern details (details captured by V1), but retains data about the outside edges.

Figure 5.13 illustrates averaging a cell fully in the window (a) and partly in the window (b). As shown, the averaging produces a single smeared 7 × 7-pixel image of the pattern in the window.

VISAREA2 detects edges near the four sides of the defocused image. In VISAREA2, a 3 × 7-pixel detector senses the presence of near-horizontal edges at the top and bottom of

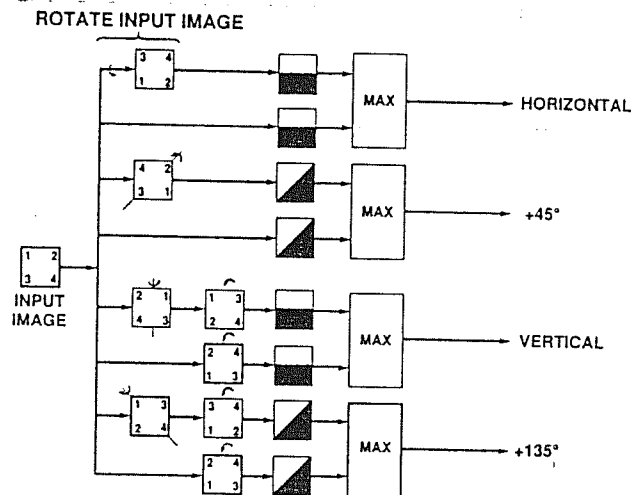


Figure 5.8 Feature detector module for the V1 module. The gray input image is reflected and rotated as shown so that system needs only two neural networks.

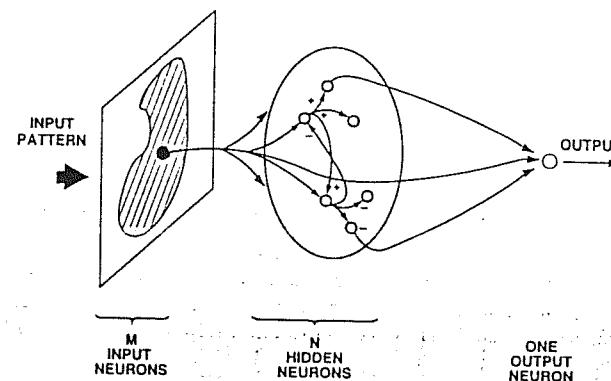


Figure 5.9 Architecture for a feature detector neural network. An input pattern, shown in cross-hatching, is impressed on  $M$  neurons. Each input neuron is connected to  $N$  hidden neurons and a single output neuron, whose output is high for a chosen angular orientation of the input pattern and low for other orientations. The hidden neurons may be excitatory (labeled +) or inhibitory (labeled -) and are interconnected. In the baseline system the input pattern is 7 × 7 pixels with 25 hidden neurons.

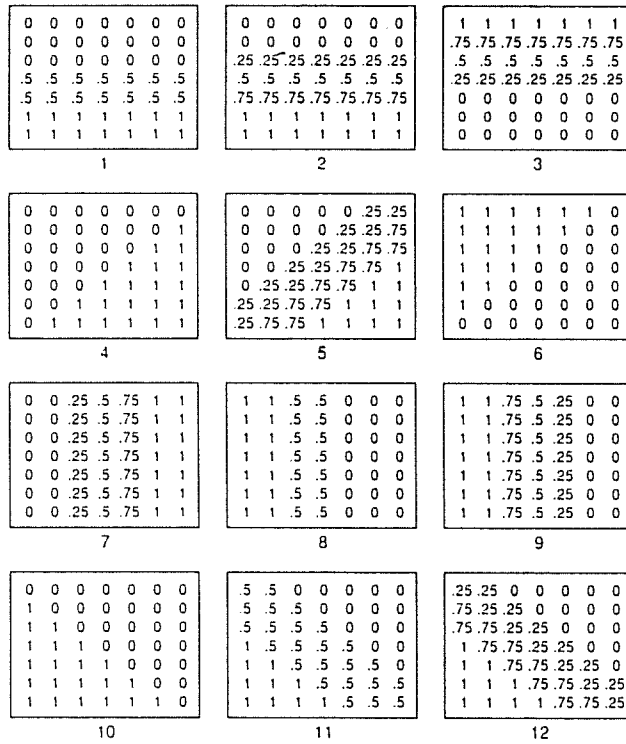


Figure 5.10 Gray patterns used to design the V1 feature detectors, as described in section 7.5. The set includes horizontal (1-3), 45° diagonal (4-6), vertical (7-9), and 135° diagonal (10-12) with two gradient directions.

the smeared image. A 7 × 3-pixel detector senses the presence of near-vertical edges at the right and at the left of the smeared image. Figure 5.14 shows the position of the detectors.

When a window centers on an object, edges occur on four sides. The VISAREA2 output is four values. The values measure the UP, DOWN, RIGHT, and LEFT edge strengths. The feature vector includes these four values, shown in figure 5.15. A single 7 × 3 NN, with rotations and complementing, can do all V2 feature detection.

Figure 5.16 shows the design patterns for VISAREA2. A genetic algorithm technique uses these patterns to design a 7 × 3-pixel input NN (see chapter 7). Patterns 1 to 4 represent edges of a gray image properly windowed. Patterns 5 to 8 represent patterns not properly windowed.

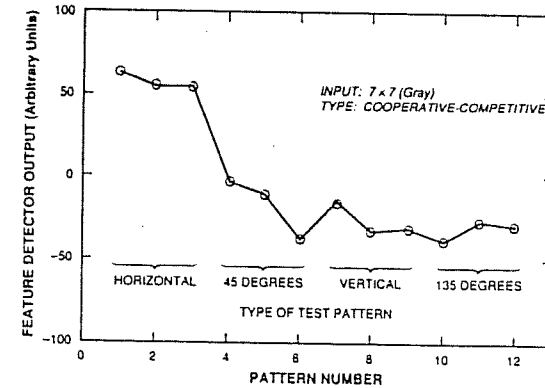


Figure 5.11 Response of the horizontal feature detector to the design patterns.

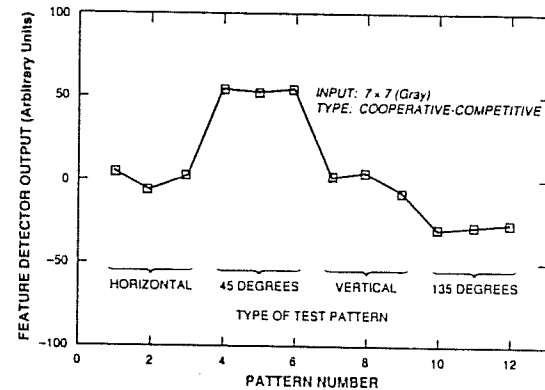


Figure 5.12 Response of the 45° diagonal feature detector to the design patterns.

The VISAREA2 edge detectors use fixed weight CC NNs with 25 neurons and one output. Figure 5.17 shows the response of the V2 vertical (LEFT) edge detector module to the design patterns. The presence of an edge in this section of the image (patterns 1 to 4) gives a large response, while the others (patterns 5 to 8) give small responses.

5. SUM—Size Feature. The third feature-generating module is SUM (figure 5.6). It adds up the pixel values of the input window. Thus, the single output from SUM measures the object's gross size after normalization. For convenience, the architecture separates this



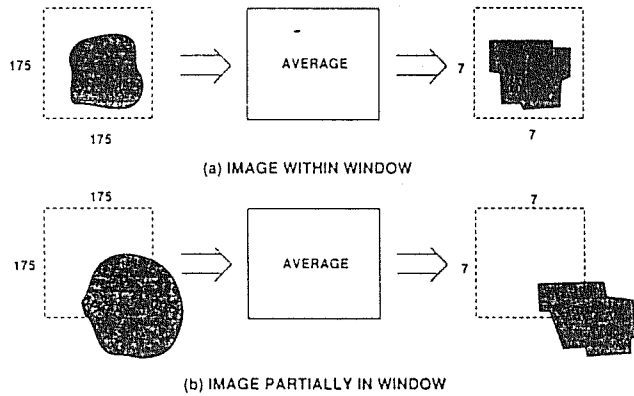


Figure 5.13 The AVERAGE module in V2 takes a, say, 175 × 175-pixel input image and smears its details to give a 7 × 7-pixel output image that retains the general shape information. The position of the input image may be within (a) or outside (b) the window. This position corresponds to the position of the smeared output image.

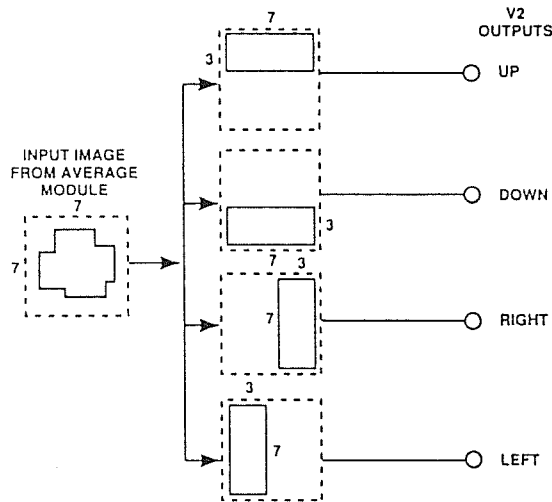


Figure 5.14 Block diagram of the V2 VISAREA2 modules. The modules detect the edges (if any) in 3 × 7- and 7 × 3-pixel sections of the 7 × 7 input image. The four outputs show the presence or absence of an edge in the corresponding section of the 7 × 7 input image.

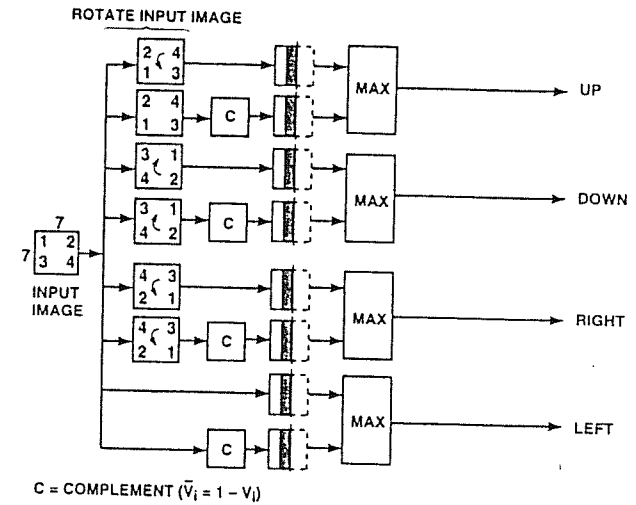


Figure 5.15 Details of the V2 VISAREA2 modules. The gray input image is rotated and complemented as shown so that only one NN is needed for detecting edges in the four sections of the image.

0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 5 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 5 0 5 1 .5 1 1 .5 1 1 .5 1 1 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1
1	2	3	4
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 5 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 5 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 5 0 5 1 0 5 1	0 5 5 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 5	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 5 1 0 5 1 0 5 5
5	6	7	8

Figure 5.16 Gray patterns used to design the V2 feature detectors, as described in section 7.5. Patterns 1–4 correspond to the presence of an edge, while patterns 5–8 correspond to a nonedge.

function from V1 and V2, though the biological function occurs in V1 and in V2 (see section 5.1). The feature vector includes the SUM output.

6. **Feature Vector.** The system classifies with data about size (SUM), overall shape (V2), and detailed structure (V1). The different subwindow sizes of SUM, V2, and V1 model roughly the different size receptive areas of the visual cortex. For the 175 × 175-pixel window, there is one value from SUM, four values from V2, and 2500 values from V1. These 2505 values form the feature vector.

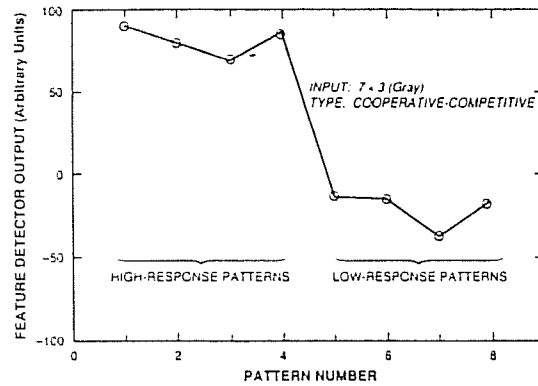


Figure 5.17 Response of the vertical LEFT feature detector to the design patterns. For the baseline system, when an edge is present in one side of an image, the response is high. Otherwise it is low. The signal-to-noise ratio is at least 50 for the design images.

Note the system does not use operations common to other systems. It uses no Fourier transform nor does it have face, corner, circle detectors, or matched-filters.

The testbed arranged the SUM, V2, and V1 outputs in a vertical vector (figure 5.7) to help interpret the feature values from SPIRALMAP and VISAREA1.

The feature values from the image's outer parts are at the top of the vector. Feature values from inner parts are at the bottom. Thus data about the general shape of an image are found at the top of the vector, and data about the interior are at the bottom.

Adjust the SUM, V1, and V2 values to give, roughly, equal influence to an object's size, shape, and detail structure (see [42] for examples of the procedure).

For example, figure 5.18 shows the feature vector of a human cell from a normal Pap smear cell (see description below). Note the relative sizes of the SUM, V2, and V1 components.

Figure 5.19 shows examples of normal (a) and abnormal (b) cervical smear cells taken at  $\times 400$  magnification. The grid, not to scale, suggests the matrix of  $7 \times 7$  subwindows. The figure also displays part of their V1 feature vectors. As seen, the feature vectors of normals and abnormal are different.

7. ITC1—Classification. The recognition process consists of an unsupervised classifier (ITC1) followed by a supervised one (ITC2). The unsupervised classifier is an ART-2 NN. The testbed applies an ART-2 over other NN classifiers—perceptrons and Hopfield NNs—because of its speed, stability, feature amplification, and noise reduction. These characteristics better suit the application. ART-2 is also a better model of the biology (see chapter 4).

To train the ART-2, set the initial LTM trace values according to a rule given at the end of section 4.2. Next, present a set of training patterns to F1, one after the other. At first,

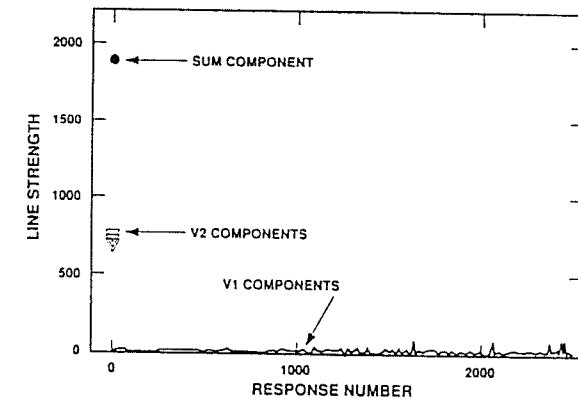


Figure 5.18 Feature vector of a normal Pap smear cell. The three kinds of components (SUM, V2, and V1) of the feature vector are weighted so that classification is from size (SUM), general shape (V2), and interior details (V1).

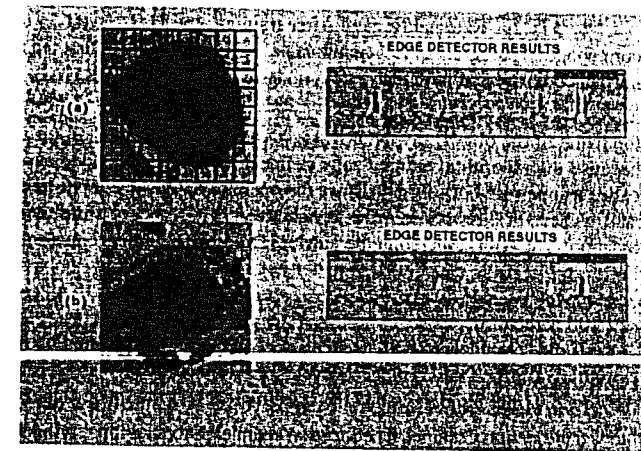


Figure 5.19 Comparison of (a) normal Pap smear and (b) abnormal Pap smear cells. Shown on the right are 512 of 2500 V1 features from the center of the images, that is, near the nucleus. The grid (not to scale) suggests the  $7 \times 7$  boxes of V1 where the system detects edges.

when ART-2 is untrained, the first pattern immediately causes the NN to enter the learning mode. The network learns the pattern by modifying the weights associated with an F2 node. After learning the first pattern, each succeeding pattern will trigger the network to search for a match among the F2 nodes.

If the pattern is a close match to a previously learned one, ART-2 enters the learning mode. ART-2 modifies the LTM trace so the trace represents a composition of all the past closely matched patterns.

If the pattern mismatches all the previously learned ones, ART-2 goes to the learning mode. ART-2 modifies the weights associated with an unused F2 node. Thus ART-2 automatically associates each pattern with an F2 node. In this way ART-2 programs itself.

After training, present a new pattern. ART-2 produces the pattern's exemplar and searches the LTM trace for the most closely matched exemplar. When a match is found, the corresponding F2 neuron gives the category best matching the pattern.

An important parameter is the vigilance, the degree-of-similarity threshold, between the LTM trace and the input exemplar. If the ART-2 metric equals or exceeds the vigilance, ART-2 associates the pattern with the corresponding F2 node. If the metric is less than the vigilance, ART-2 declares a mismatch and searches among the other nodes for a match.

A low vigilance value (near zero) causes the system to tolerate large differences and results in coarsely defined categories. A high vigilance value (near one) causes increased sensitivity in discrimination and results in finely defined categories.

In practice, set the vigilance high enough to distinguish patterns that represent different categories. The value, however, should be low enough and so slight that changes from wrong information will not cause misclassification.

8. ITC2—External Names. After training, the ITC1 (ART-2) output nodes of F2 correspond to particular objects in the FOV. For example, if the first ten training images are normal cells, the first ten ITC1 output nodes correspond to NORMAL.

ITC2 is a simple logical OR operation that associates activity of these nodes with the name of the object, say, NORMAL. (Note: ITC1 is called an unsupervised classifier because the algorithm automatically defines the input-to-F2 node associations. ITC2 is called a supervised classifier because the operator defines the input-to-output labels.)

After ITC2 processing, the system decides whether to store the object's name and location. The ART-2 matching parameter [15] is the confidence measure for this decision. For example, if the matching parameter just passes a threshold (the vigilance), the "confidence level" is, say, 50 percent. A perfect match corresponds to a "confidence level" of, say, 100 percent.

If the "confidence level" passes a second threshold specified by the user, the system stores the results. If the confidence level is not sufficiently high, the location channel adjusts the window (discussed next) and the system processes the image again.

9. Location Channel. The location channel places an input window around an object so the system might classify it. The location channel consists of the superior colliculus (SUPER), LGN, V2, and posterior parietal cortex (PPC) modules, shown in figure 5.6.

Location is a two-stage process consisting of coarse location followed by pull-in.

In practice the processing for location is as complex as the processing for classification. Location must quickly find patterns of interest in the background clutter. For example, the search for one or two abnormal cells in 50,000 (typical of a Pap smear slide) is a location problem. After finding an abnormal cell, recognition is relatively easy.

10. SUPERC—Coarse Location. SUPERC processing uses a second ART-2 NN to perform coarse location, shown in figure 5.20. The network's LTM trace, computed off-line, corresponds to general shapes of interest. This trace primes the system.

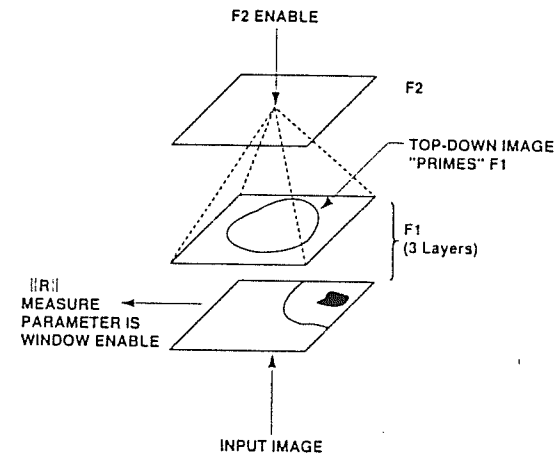


Figure 5.20 Schematic of the coarse location processing. A stored top-down exemplar in an ART-2 neural network primes the system for detecting objects of general size and shape, even if off-center.

To detect the presence of an object, the SUPERC ART-2 compares the exemplar of its current window to the LTM trace. If the object's size is correct, even an off-center object triggers a match.

In the example, SUPERC extracts a  $175 \times 175$ -pixel window from the  $525 \times 525$ -pixel FOV input image. It impresses the window on the F1 bottom layer. The  $175 \times 175$ -pixel images produce 30,625 inputs to the ART-2.

The ART-2 computes the exemplar. The system compares the LTM trace to the exemplar. The designer selects the LTM trace so an object of the correct general size causes a match, even if off-center. A match suggests an object of this size is present.

If the system finds no match in a window, it moves on to an abutting window. In the example system, there are nine coarse location positions.

The system uses the match parameter as an enable signal to the LGN module. A module inside SUPERC selects the coarse window positions. The system sends the coarse position to the ADJ box for further adjustment (figure 5.6).

11. PPC—Fine Location. The second stage of location is pull-in, or fine adjustment of the coarse location. Pull-in operates on a feedback path consisting of the LGN, V2, and PPC modules.

The PPC makes small changes in the window's position using the outputs of V2. When the system centers a window on an object, all the V2 edge strengths are about equal. Otherwise, PPC tries to equalize the V2 edge strengths.

For example, figure 5.21 shows the V2 output for an object fully in (a) and partly in the window (b).

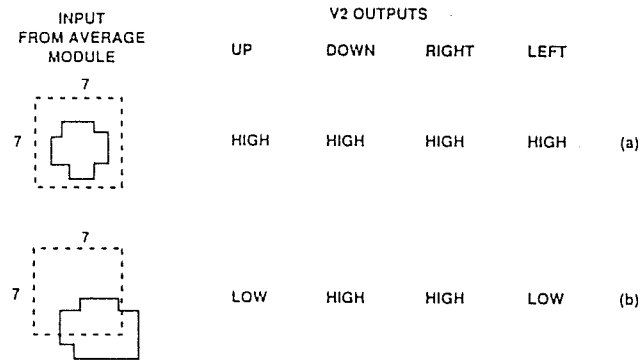


Figure 5.21 Examples of (a) the window centered on an object and the corresponding four V2 outputs, and (b) the window not centered. When the window is not centered, the unequal V2 outputs produce signals that move the window (pull-in).

When centered in the window, the object's edge strengths are about equal. When not centered, that is partly in the window, one or more edges will be missing. Then, the corresponding edge strength is small. The system then moves the window to equalize the edge strengths.

To move the window on an object, the system routes the edge strengths from V2 to the DELTA1 box in PPC. This box carries out a control law for moving the window.

For example, figure 5.21 shows an object that is below and to the right of the window. The position produces a smaller UP than DOWN response and a stronger RIGHT than LEFT response. To center the object, the DELTA1 box (figure 5.6) moves the window DOWN and RIGHT.

In the design example, the control law is a standard bang-bang rule with a dead zone for both vertical and horizontal directions. The outputs of the DELTA1 box are the changes in the vertical and horizontal directions.

Figure 5.22 shows the control laws in the example.

A second pull-in path, which consists of LGN, V2, ITC1, ITC2, and PPC, makes repeated tries at recognition. ITC2 activates this path when the classification confidence is low in a match between an input pattern and the closest stored pattern.

When activated, the DELTA2 box produces a small, random change of the window's position, and the system then tries to classify the object with greater confidence. A counter limits the number of tries.

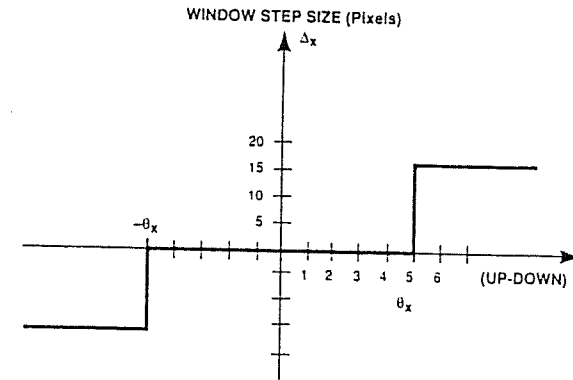


Figure 5.22 The baseline control law for vertical pull-in of the window. The two V2 outputs, UP and DOWN, are subtracted. If the thresholds are exceeded, the window is moved. In practice, select the thresholds and step size according to the application. Horizontal pull-in uses a similar system with the RIGHT and LEFT V2 outputs.

12. **System dynamics.** In computer simulations, the system runs sequentially. First, the location channel finds and windows an object. The classification channel then does recognition.

In a parallel implementation with custom hardware, the modules run simultaneously. Sequence control is by enable signals and carefully chosen time constants.

The time constants associated with the location channel are short, so the system converges quickly to the location. The classification channel time constants are longer, making the recognition process slower. The difference in the time constants ensures classification on a centered object.

13. **Computer Simulations.** MIT Lincoln Laboratory colleagues and I developed a software testbed of this architecture. Computer simulations run on a network of SUN workstations and a CONVEX 220 supercomputer. We studied several classes of images, including vehicles and cytology specimens (cells) [38,39,40,41,42]. We also trained on TV images and tested on corresponding laser radar images, and vice versa [39]. We selected these classes because large databases exist. Moreover most researchers judge them unrelated, thus, showing the generality of the system.

We separately tested the main modules, the location channel, and the classification channel to characterize each. The preliminary classifying results of the cytology study are as follows. We applied the classifying channel to images of human cervical smears (GYN pap). In collaboration with pathologists from the Lahey Clinic, Burlington, Massachusetts, we selected prototypical normal and abnormal cells to train and to test. We photographed the cells, made slides, and then transferred the images to the computer. For these tests, we centered the cells by hand; tests on locating cells are in [42].

Table 5.1 summarizes the cytology training and classifying results. Our original database consisted of 23 normal and 16 abnormal cells. We generated data for different orientations by rotating each image  $90^\circ$ ,  $180^\circ$ , and  $270^\circ$ . The procedure expanded the data set to 92 normals and 64 abnormals, or 156 altogether.

TABLE 5.1. PRELIMINARY CYTOLOGY RESULTS USING ITERATIVE TRAINING

Cell Type	Using Iterative Training System Classification			Total
	Train	Normal	Abnormal	
Normal	26	66	0	92
Abnormal	31	0	33	64

Experiments showed an iterative training procedure gives good results. At first, we trained the system on two normal and two abnormal images. We then tested on the remaining 152 images. We increased the training set by adding, roughly, equal numbers of normals from the false positives and abnormals from false negatives. Error rates drop as one repeats the procedure. Table 5.1 shows no false positives and false negatives with 118 training images.

These results suggest the system generalizes from its training. In mathematical terms, the feature vectors lie in a 2505-dimensional vector space. The normal cells lie in a subspace; the abnormal cells lie in a different subspace. These results suggest the boundary in feature space between normal and abnormal cells is comparatively smooth. That is, the system generalizes. A highly jagged or checkerboard boundary would need all the images for training (no generalizing). The results also suggest the system may have promise for initial cytology screening [80,81]. These results suggest one can drive the error rates for a slide to less than, say, five percent. This can be done with training sets of several hundred examples for each cell type.

More testing is needed to confirm these preliminary results and to assess the system's practical value. These tests, currently being conducted, include a much larger database so they can measure error rates less than a few percent.

### 5.3 DISCUSSION

Researchers have studied MV for many years, and they have developed a standard technology. Yet to some, MV's performance is disappointing. To show the context of the preceding section, a summary of conventional non-NN MV by Rosenfeld, a leading practitioner, follows.

The prevalent opinion in machine vision today is that any significant increase in processing complexity for industrial applications must await the arrival of new special-purpose, parallel-type computer architectures. [78, p. viii]

There is inadequacy in current theories [of machine vision]. There is paucity of well defined problems that have well defined rewards associated with them. [78, p. 189-90]

Another problem associated with current activities on the theory of machine vision is an underlying assumption that a theory of "general" machine vision is achievable. This assumption may be false. [78, p. 189-90]

... standard vision techniques for feature detection, segmentation, recovery, etc., often do not perform very well when applied to natural scenes. [78, p. 867]

Ideally, the [vision process] stages should be closely integrated; the results obtained at a given stage should provide feedback to modify the techniques used at previous stages. This is rarely done in existing vision systems, and as a result, little is known about how to design systems that incorporate feedback between stages. [78, p. 868]

Little is known about visual knowledge representation or about flexible control structures for vision systems. [78, p. 868]

... humans can recognize objects—even complex objects whose presence was unexpected—in a fraction of a second, which is enough time for only a few hundred (!) "cycles" of the neural "hardware" in the human visual system. Computer vision systems have a long way to go before they will be able to match this performance. [78, p. 868]

In summary, current MV performance is significantly less than the performance of biological vision. Note the references to parallel types of architectures, feedback to earlier stages, and flexible control structures. Note also the need for well-defined problems, a general structure, and applications to natural scenes. The NN architecture described in the preceding section has these features.

### SUGGESTED REFERENCES

- D. HUBEL, *Eye, Brain, and Vision*. The literature on primate vision is large. Many books deal with this subject alone, and every general treatise on human biology devotes some space to it. Technical journals publish a continuing series of articles on vision. One of the best summaries of this field is by Hubel. It covers the pioneering work of Hubel and Wiesel, whose discoveries have rightly become recognized as of great importance. Although many other works are for the specialist, Hubel's work is pleasantly discursive. His style is less formal and more physical, consequently, more intelligible.
- D. ROSE AND V. DOBSON (ed.), *Models of the Visual Cortex*. A quarter of a century has passed since the work of Hubel and Wiesel. During that time there has been a profusion of ideas about the exact nature of the underlying mechanisms in the visual cortex. This book presents the ideas and conclusions of 75 of the most prominent theorists in the field. The subject matter is concentrated on area 17. The mathematics is limited to calculus.
- J. MAUNSELL, *Physiological Evidence for Two Visual Subsystems*. Many studies describe two distinct kinds of higher functions in the visual system. One function involves primarily shape, color, and pattern. The other function involves motion and spatial relationships. The paper discusses the behavioral, physiological, and anatomical data bearing on these two visual functions. The functions occur in different brain regions. A duality arises in the organization of the earliest stages of the visual system.
- D. VAN ESSEN AND J. MAUNSELL, *Hierarchical Organizations and Functional Streams in the Visual Cortex*. Hubel and Wiesel obtained evidence for many sequential stages of information processing along the visual pathway. As researchers studied the visual pathways in greater detail, they found evidence not supporting a strictly serial scheme of organization. In fact, Hubel and Wiesel's own

findings—that area 17 projects to several cortical areas—demonstrates parallel outputs from a single area. The article concerns mainly the relationships among visual areas, rather than with their internal circuitry. It presents evidence for at least two major streams of processing as described in the text.

- H. LI AND J. KENDER (eds.), *Computer Vision*. This is an overview of conventional machine vision theory and technology, circa 1988. The 13 papers fall in four groups: introductory, theoretic foundations, hardware architectures, and applications. A main result from this overview is that standard vision techniques for feature detection, segmentation, and so on, often do not perform very well when applied to natural scenes. Human beings can recognize objects—even objects whose presence was unexpected—in a fraction of a second. Computer vision systems have a long way to go before they will be able to match this performance.
- J. LLOYD, *Thermal Imaging Systems*. Many studies demonstrate that bar chart equivalents are useful in assessing a machine vision system. Section 10.4 of this reference discusses the bar chart equivalent, known as the Johnson criteria, for detecting (object present), recognition (man or woman), and identification (an individual). The Johnson criteria are a well-known way of connecting laboratory measurements to in-the-field performance.

### EXERCISES

1. Design a neural network visual system for reading English letters and words. Size the modules. Describe the training and testing.
2. Design a neural network visual system for recognizing common vehicles at a fixed distance away.
3. Describe how to combine the outputs of two different sensors, say, a video camera and an imaging radar, for increase performance. (*Hint*: Combine the feature detector outputs of the two sensors in one fused feature vector.)

## 6

# Hand-Eye Systems

The preceding chapter considered NN machine vision systems. This chapter extends NN vision by combining vision and motor control. Besides being of practical importance, this material introduces NN control system design from a biological viewpoint.

The program for the chapter is twofold. First, it summarizes selected characteristics of biological motor control. Second, it presents two examples of eye-motor systems that model selected properties.

These eye-motor systems apply the elementary modules derived in preceding chapters. Assuming familiarity with previous material, the discussion emphasizes new themes and the added theory.

### 6.1 OVERVIEW OF HUMAN MOTOR CONTROL

A long series of investigations have shown the design of motor systems in living creatures. This section summarizes motor control in human beings.

Summarizing [9,56,75] researchers classify muscle as smooth or striated. Smooth muscle appears structureless under the microscope. This muscle is primarily concerned with slow contracts in internal organs and is under involuntary control. Striated muscle, appearing filamentous under the microscope, is cardiac or skeletal. Cardiac muscle produces regular, self-sustaining contractions, controlled by nerves and chemical hormones.

Skeletal muscle—the subject of this chapter—is under voluntary control. Though served by nerves and hormones, the control mechanisms—described below—differ from those of cardiac muscle.

Most striated muscles connect two bones across a joint. (The exceptions are extraocular muscles which move the eyeballs and lingual muscles which move the tongue.) Another muscle opposes every muscle pulling a bone in one direction. That is, there are antagonistic muscle pairs.

Skeletal muscles work in groups. About 650 muscles sheath the human skeleton. One walking step uses about 200 muscles. Forty or more muscles lift a leg and move it forward. Strength depends on the fibers in the muscle. The fibers consist of muscle cells.

Striated muscle cells are a few millimeters long. A membrane called the sarcolemma surrounds these cells. In each cell are many rodlike myofibrils, responsible for the contraction.

A myofibril has repeating light-dark regions, causing the striped appearance of the muscle under the microscope. A myofibril consists of thick filaments sliding inside thin filaments. The thick filaments contain myosin; the thin filaments contain actin.

The sliding-filament model explains contraction. In this model the lengths of the thick and thin filaments remain the same and slide past each other. During contraction the cell length may decrease 50 percent.

The molecular mechanism of muscle contraction is an actin-myosin interaction cycle. The energy source is ATP, discussed in chapter 2.

Motor neurons control muscle contraction. The axons of these neurons release acetylcholine, a neurotransmitter, causing contraction. The axons per motor neuron vary from three for eyeball muscles to hundreds for, say, thigh muscles. Generally, if a single motor neuron innervates few muscle fibers, the movements produced are subtler and more finely graded.

Besides motor neurons, sensory receptors in the muscles give tension measurements, and sensory receptors on tendons give joint positions. Tendons are tough inelastic tissue connecting muscle to bone.

Voluntary movements start in the motor cortex. Like the sensory cortex, the motor cortex has a vertical, columnar organization. Each motor column is a small group of neurons affecting the muscles of a joint. Research shows that movement commands encode to reach a certain joint position, not to activate a series of muscles.

The motor cortex neurons, called Betz cells, communicate directly with the motor neurons of the spinal cord. The axons converge in a large bundle called the pyramidal tract.

Besides the motor cortex, two other brain structures regulate voluntary movements. The basal ganglia in the midbrain, consisting of the striatum, pallidum, subthalamic nucleus, and substantia nigra, gets sensory inputs and starts slow directed large movements. That is, it does coarse adjustments.

The cerebellum in the hindbrain also gets sensory inputs and initiates fast smaller movements. That is, it does fine adjustments. The pyramidal tract sends these adjustments. The cerebellum stores programs of learned movements which the motor cortex can activate.

To make fine adjustments, the cerebellum tracks the position of head and trunk by signals from the muscles and tendons. Large cerebellum neurons called Purkinje cells combine this information, constantly monitoring a map of body position and location. Each Purkinje cell typically gets up to 100,000 inputs from sensory neurons.

## 6.2 ADAPTIVE EYE-HAND COORDINATION

Developing NN models of the human motor control system is just starting—a task to continue for many years because of its complexity. To date researchers have designed NNs capturing some important biological characteristics. And indeed, practical applications of these control systems are also starting.

This section and the next describe example NN eye-motor control systems inspired by biology. These systems develop accurate sensory-motor coordination despite changes in the body dimensions, motor strength, and unpredictable events. Moreover, this coordination is automatic.

For simplicity consider a system consisting of two eyes and one arm. The purpose of the system is to look at an object and reach for it with the arm. The system trains and corrects itself. (The model can easily be generalized to more sensory inputs and more limb joints.)

Following Kuperstein [57], develop the system as follows:

1. Arm-Muscle Signals. Assume a limb consisting of two joints, a shoulder, and an elbow. To introduce notation, let  $a_{pq}$  be the arm-muscle signals, shown in figure 6.1.

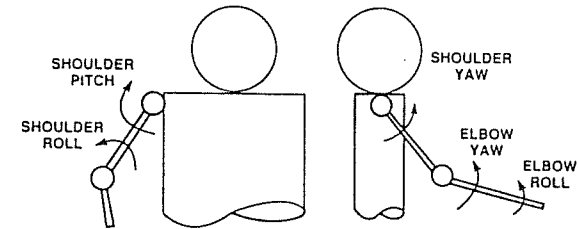


Figure 6.1 Nomenclature for a simple two-joint limb. Arm-muscle signals,  $a_{pq}$ , activate antagonistic muscle pairs ( $p = 1, 2$ ) in five degrees of freedom ( $q = 1, \dots, 5$ ). For the shoulder,  $q = 1$  (roll),  $q = 2$  (pitch), and  $q = 3$  (yaw). For the elbow,  $q = 4$  (roll) and  $q = 5$  (yaw).

Denote the antagonistic muscle pairs by  $p = 1, 2$ . Denote shoulder roll, pitch, and yaw by  $q = 1, 2$ , and 3. Denote elbow roll by  $q = 4$  and yaw by  $q = 5$ .

2. Joint-Angle Activation. Assume a joint angle is linearly proportional to the muscle activation. Assume a monotonic dependency between angle and activation (this is a major assumption—see section 6.3).

3. Eye-Muscle Signals. The signals that contract and point each eye are  $e_{pq}$ . Denote the antagonistic muscle pairs by  $p = 1, 2$ . Following human biology, an eye is pulled in three directions spaced  $60^\circ$  apart. The direction indices are  $q = 1, 2$ , and 3 (figure 6.2). Denote the right-eye signals by  $e_{pq}^r$  and the left-eye signals by  $e_{pq}^l$ .

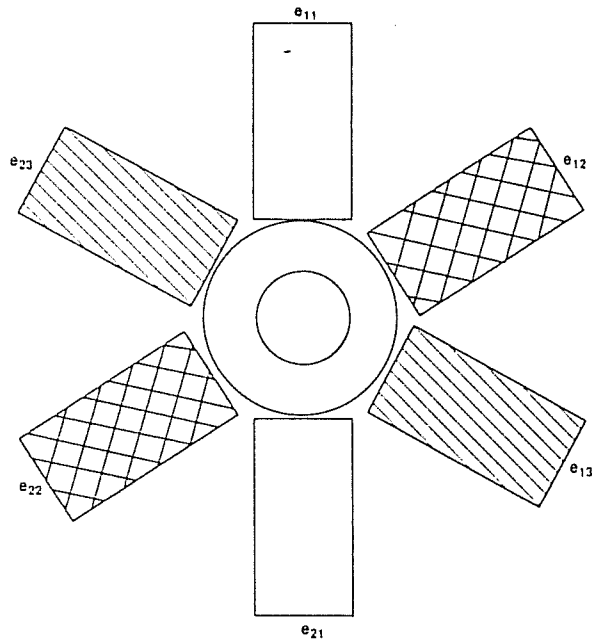


Figure 6.2 Nomenclature for the eye-ball muscles. Eye-muscle signals,  $e_{pq}$ , activate antagonistic muscle pairs ( $p = 1, 2$ ) in three directions spaced  $60^\circ$  apart ( $q = 1, 2, 3$ ).

4. Retinal Map. Each eye registers light intensity on a two-dimensional space. The light intensity at position  $i$ ,  $j$  is  $v_{ij}$ . Denote the right eye by  $v_{ij}^r$  and the left eye by  $v_{ij}^l$ . The indices  $i = 1, 2, \dots, I$  and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, J$  span the two-dimensional visual space.

5. Eye Foveation. This system relates  $e_{pq}$  and  $v_{ij}$  of each eye. Many models are possible. For simplicity, assume the system points the eyeballs toward the visual center of an object in the field of view, shown in figure 6.3. (For a better model use the material on vision in chapter 5.)

6. Gaze Map. Biology vision systems do not have sensors directly measuring eye position, so the eye position must be computed from the eye signals. The gaze map gives the eye positions from the foveation signals.

The gaze map is three distributions of activations,  $E_{pq<i>}^r$ ,  $E_{pq<i>}^l$ , and  $E_{pq<i>}^d$ , which give right, left, and difference (disparity) in eye pointing.

The recruitment function gives the gaze map as follows:

$$E_{pq<i>} = \{f(i)[e_{pq} - g(i)]\}^+ \tag{6.1}$$

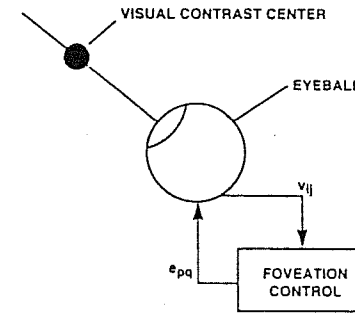


Figure 6.3 Foveation system for pointing a sensor. An eye foveation control system points the two eyes toward the visual contrast center of an object in the visual field of view.

where

$$f(i) = \alpha \frac{i}{I}, \quad i = 1, \dots, I \tag{6.2}$$

and

$$g(i) = \beta \frac{i}{I}, \quad i = 1, \dots, I. \tag{6.3}$$

These equations model the oculomotor nuclei in the midbrain, shown schematically in figure 6.4.

7. Retinal and Orientation Maps. In human beings the visual cortex processes retinal maps for orientations in lines, slots, and edges. The result of this processing is the orientation maps.

To model visual cortex processing, assume the system is sensitive to orientations in four directions:  $0^\circ$ ,  $45^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$ , and  $135^\circ$ . Assume a convolution gives this processing, as follows.

$$V_{x<ij>} = v_{<ij>} * k_x, \tag{6.4}$$

where  $k_x$  are kernel matrices.

The kernel matrices have the same negative coefficients everywhere except along one string in one of four orientations. The coefficients in that string are the same positive number.

Comparing  $V_{x<ij>}^r$  and  $V_{x<ij>}^l$  gives  $V_{x<ij>}^d$ . Interleave the  $V_{x<ij>}$  elements to form the visual map. The visual map mimics the retinotopic layout of neural responses in the A-17 visual cortex, shown in figure 6.5. (See chapter 5 for a better model of the feature detectors.)

8. Weight Maps. Combine the gaze and visual maps through weight maps to produce arm-muscle signals. Let  $W_{ij<pq>}$  be weight maps used to gate (multiply) the gaze map and the visual map. The  $ij$  indices give the map position in the two-dimensional gaze map and the visual map. The  $pq$  indices give the limb-muscle elements.



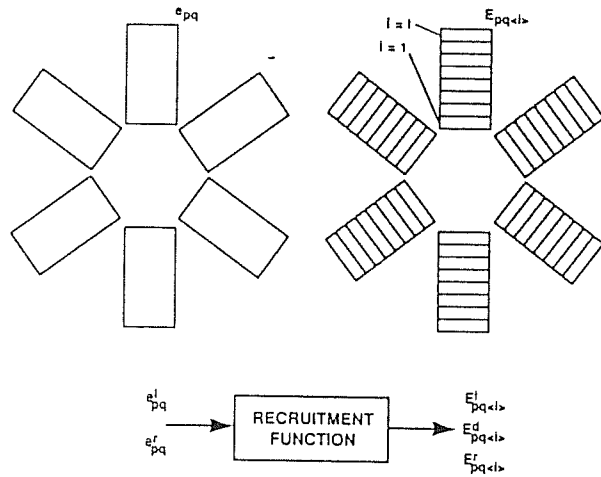


Figure 6.4 Gaze map schematic. The gaze map is a set of three neural activations  $E_{pq<ij>}^l$  (left),  $E_{pq<ij>}^d$  (right), and  $E_{pq<ij>}^r$  (disparity), where  $p, q$  are as in figure 6.3 and  $l = 1, \dots, I$  (network population). The recruitment function maps the eye-muscle signals to the three activation distributions. The gaze map mimics neural responses in the oculomotor nuclei of the midbrain.

9. Motor Signals. Assume computed motor signals, from gaze and vision, are  $M'_{pq}$ . Compute  $M_{pq}$  by

$$M_{pq} = \sum_{i,j} S_{ij} W_{ij<pq>}, \quad (6.5)$$

where  $S_{ij}$  is an element from the gaze map or the visual map.

10. Arm-Muscle Signals. The motor signals from the brain produce the arm-muscle signals. Assume

$$a_{pq} = \frac{M_{pq} + M'_{pq}}{\sum_p (M_{pq} + M'_{pq})}, \quad (6.6)$$

where  $M_{pq}$  is the actual motor signal traveling from brain to spinal cord. At first, the arm-muscle signals may be random. Note, the denominator normalizes the antagonistic muscle pairs.

11. Learning Rule. Learning adjusts the weight maps of the system. Comparing the actual and computed motor signals produces an error, which is

$$\epsilon_{pq} = M_{pq} - M'_{pq}. \quad (6.7)$$

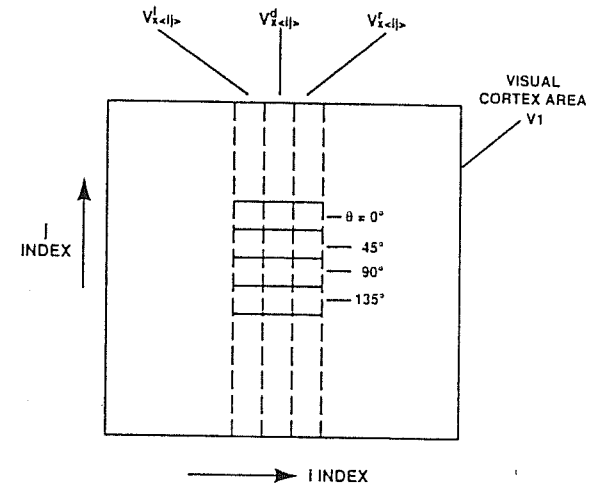


Figure 6.5 Visual map schematic. The visual map is a set of neural activations  $V_{x<ij>}^l$  (left),  $V_{x<ij>}^d$  (right), and  $V_{x<ij>}^r$  (disparity), where  $<ij>$  are the two-dimensional coordinates of the retina and  $x$  indexes the orientation, say,  $0^\circ, 45^\circ, 90^\circ$ , and  $135^\circ$ . The visual map mimics the retinotopic layout of some neural responses in the visual cortex.

The learning rule

$$W(n+1)_{ij<pq>} = W(n)_{ij<pq>} + \sigma S_{ij} \epsilon_{pq} \quad (6.8)$$

adjusts the weight maps, where  $\sigma$  is the learning rate.

Figure 6.6 shows a block diagram of the system. The system is first trained and then operated as follows.

12. Training Procedure. To train the system, follow these steps:

- a. Initialize  $W_{ij<qp>} = 0$ .
- b. Choose random values for the motor signals,  $M_{pq}$ , and for the object positions in the FOV.
- c. Foveate on the object.
- d. Compute the gaze map and the visual map.
- e. Update the weight map by the learning rule.
- f. Repeat steps (b) to (e) for other motor signals and other object positions.

13. Operating. After training, the system can accurately reach for objects. First, the eyes search and find an object in the FOV. Second, the system computes motor signals. Third, the signals move the limb to reach the object.

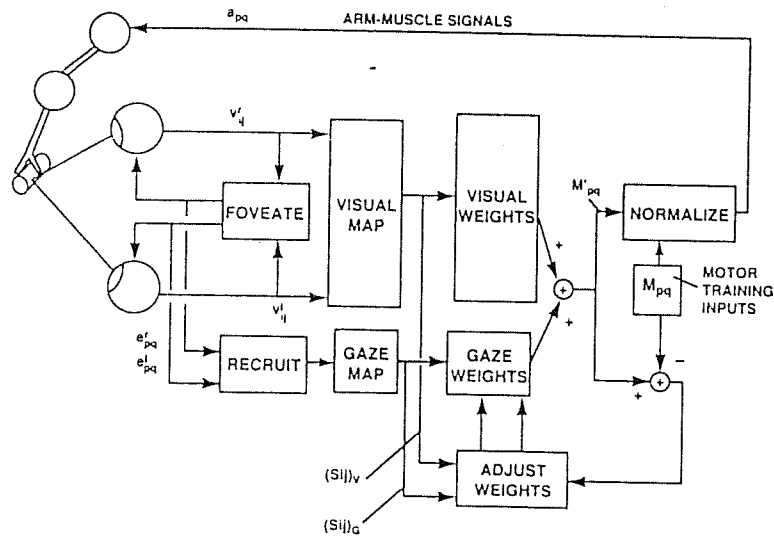


Figure 6.6 Block diagram of a neural network for adaptive hand-eye coordination. During learning, a random generator produces signals positioning the arm while the hand holds an object. The two eyes orient to the object. The eye-muscle signals transform to a gaze map. The visual signals transform to a visual map. Stereo views of the object register in the retinas. The V1 module processes these images for orientation and disparity. The visual weights gate signals from each visual map unit to each arm-muscle unit. Normalizing the sum of the products of gaze map and visual map produces the arm-muscle signals. The comparator matches these gaze-visual product signals. The difference changes the values in the two weight maps.

During learning, a random generator produces signals positioning the arm while the hand holds an object. The two eyes orient to the object.

The eye-muscle signals transform to a gaze map. Each leg of the gaze map represents the pulling direction of either eye. The gaze-map values (weights) gate signals from each gaze map unit to each arm-muscle unit.

The visual signals transform to a visual map. First, stereo views of the object register in the retinas. In each trial, the V1 module processes these images for orientation and disparity. The visual map interleaves the orientation and disparity responses from the two eyes. The visual weights gate signals from each visual map unit to each arm-muscle unit.

Normalizing the sum of the products of gaze map and visual map produces the arm-muscle signals. The comparator matches these gaze-visual product signals. The difference changes the values in the two weight maps.

Kuperstein's [57] computer simulations show learning converges in 3000 to 5000 trials, with learning rates,  $\sigma$ , about  $10^{-3}$ . After training, the average errors over many trials are about four percent of the arm's length and  $4^\circ$  in angle.

### 6.3 PLANNED ARM MOVEMENTS

The preceding section presented a simple NN eye-hand system. This section generalizes the movement dynamics.

In the preceding model the joint angles are a monotonic function of the muscle signals and, when activated, the limb goes to its target position. The system is an example of a spring-to-endpoint (STE) system.

This section modifies the above STE model to include muscle dynamics, initial conditions, muscle contraction rates, and feedback signals from muscle sensors (proprioceptors). The preceding model has none of these characteristics. This section first describes the system and then defines it mathematically.

Following Bullock and Grossberg [12], to move a limb, assume the sensorimotor system computes a target position command (TPC) for the limb. A TPC specifies where a movement intends to stop.

In response to a TPC, a limb must move different distances and different directions depending on its initial position.

Assume the system also computes a present position command (PPC). This command accounts for initial positions of the limb and is the signal sent to the muscles. Thus, a single TPC can produce many PPCs corresponding to different trajectories of the limb.

The difference between a TPC and a PPC is the error signal or difference vector (DV). A central issue is computing DV. In general

$$DV = \text{fn}(TPC - PPC). \quad (6.9)$$

Computing TPCs, PPCs, and DVs to produce a trajectory is a newer way of designing control systems than the conventional method from Newtonian kinematics. (In the Newtonian method the system explicitly controls every position of the trajectory. In practice, this method leads to a combinatorial explosion. Moreover, this NN method is different from standard control theory though having a superficial likeness to (1) classical control theory—predominantly single-input-single-output models—and (2) modern state-variable control theory—predominantly multiple input-multiple output models.)

Figure 6.7 shows a schematic block diagram for TPC, PPC, and DV. Measurements show this system models well the cell populations in the motor cortex. The system embodies the idea of intention through computation of a TPC. Intention also leads to variable speed control.

An "act of will" or GO signal converts the TPC to the selected motion. The system needs such a mechanism because movements usually have several options—for example, fast or slow. That is, the GO signal specifies the overall speed.

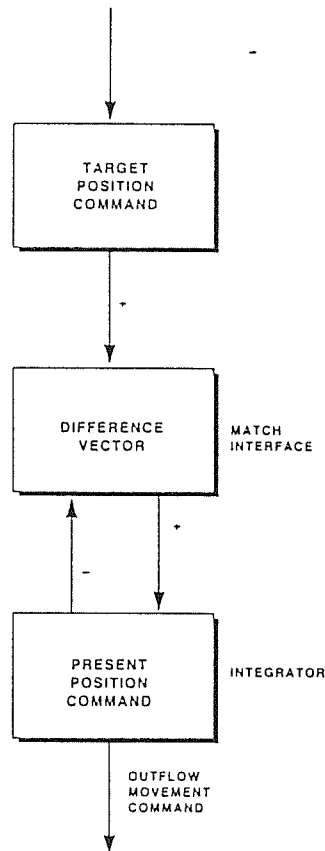


Figure 6.7 Block diagram of a basic motor command system. The system matches a target position command (TPC) to a present position command (PPC), producing a difference vector (DV). The DV then adaptively changes PPC, driving it to the TPC. (From Grossberg and Bullock, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation in Grossberg (ed.), Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Reprinted with permission of The MIT Press, 1988).

In the model, a GO signal gates (multiplies) actuation of a movement and regulates the rate of PPC update. A GO signal regulates a system shown in figure 6.8.

The system produces coordinated movements of muscles. The system automatically compensates for the different contractions of each muscle group. Researchers call a coordinated muscle group a *synergy*.

To reach an object, a synergy may first activate the shoulder, elbow, wrist, and fingers. Then another synergy may activate wrist and fingers to grasp the object.

Learning produces the synergies. Neural control structures quickly and flexibly reorganize muscle groups needed for a synergy. Moreover, the TPC and PPC commands organize muscle groups in synergies.

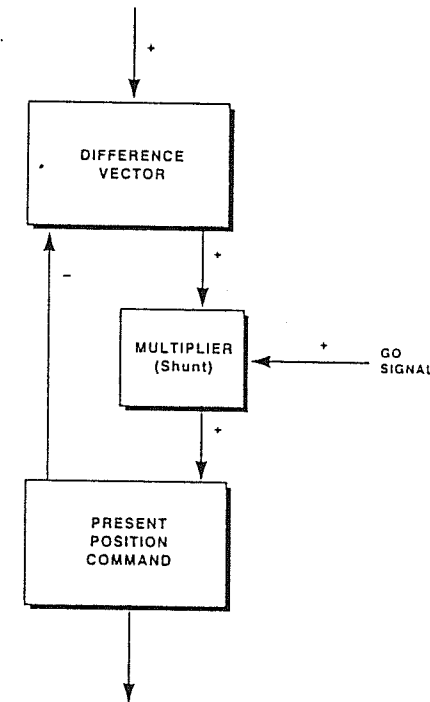


Figure 6.8 Block diagram of system with a GO signal for controlling speed. A GO signal gates the DV signal, so the PPC goes to the TPC at a rate regulated by GO. (From Grossberg and Bullock, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation in Grossberg (ed.), Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Reprinted with permission of The MIT Press, 1988).

The contraction duration is roughly equal across a set of muscles for each multijoint synergistic action. Thus, the contraction rates are unequal, because the contraction distances are often unequal. That is, the contraction rates compensate for inequalities of distances with the GO signal controlling the contraction rate.

The degree of matching between a TPC and a PPC controls learning a synergy. That is, learning updates a motor LTM trace only when the TPC equals the PPC. Thus, DV controls the gating signal and prevents learning a bad match.

To illustrate, figure 6.9 shows DV gating the learning. The gating prevents incorrect associations from occurring between eye-hand TPCs and hand-arm TPCs.

The organization of mammalian motor systems are pairs of agonist and antagonist muscles, described in section 6.1. The system applies an opponent organization to convert DVs to a PPC that matches a TPC. Figure 6.10 shows the model for an agonist-antagonist organization.

Having described a sensory-motor system inspired by biology, a mathematical model follows. (Many models are consistent with the above overall block diagrams. Bullock and Grossberg [12] developed the following model.) Let

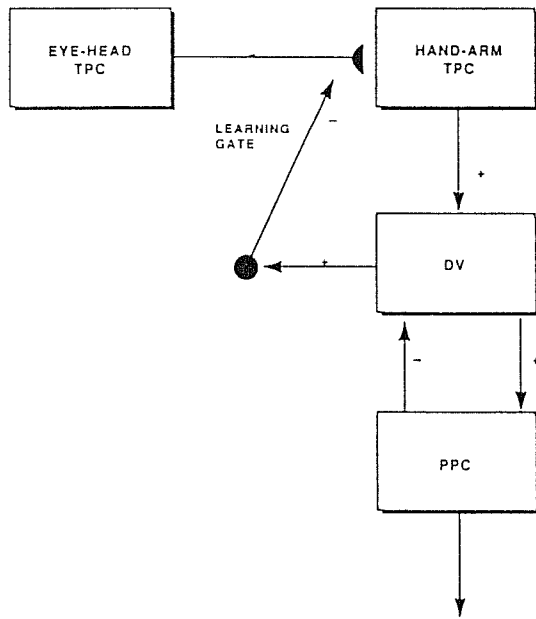


Figure 6.9 VITE system with learning. If nonzero the DV signal produces inhibition. The inhibition prevents wrong associations between eye-head TPCs and hand-arm TPCs. (From Grossberg and Bullock, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation* in Grossberg (ed.), *Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Reprinted with permission of The MIT Press, 1988).

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \alpha(-V + T - P), \tag{6.10}$$

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = G[V]^r, \tag{6.11}$$

where

$T$  = target position input (TPC),

$V$  = DV activity,

$P$  = PPC activity,

$G$  = GO signal.

Note that  $V$  in (6.10) averages the error signal  $T - P$ . Note also that if  $G = 0$  in (6.11),  $P$  is constant.

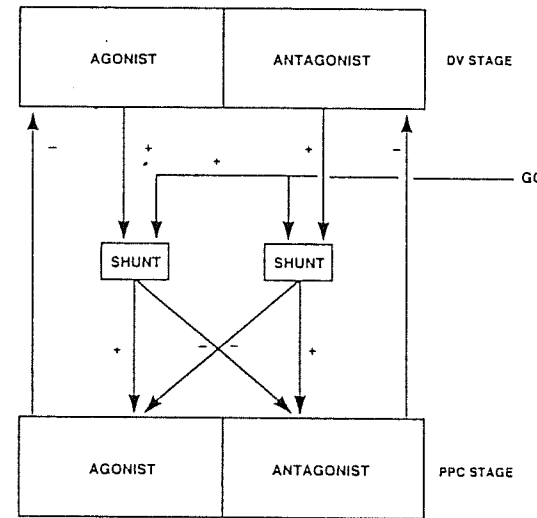


Figure 6.10 VITE system with agonist and antagonist muscles. The DV stage and PPC have two channels cross coupling for agonistic and antagonistic interaction. The cross coupling coordinates updating PPCs. (From Grossberg and Bullock, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation* in Grossberg (ed.), *Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Reprinted with permission of The MIT Press, 1988).

Figure 6.11 shows the general behavior of this system for step inputs. At  $t = 0$ , a step TPC is introduced (a). Assume the GO signal is a faster-than-linear signal (b). The error signal  $DV$  quickly increases to a maximum, then decreases as the PPC (c) approaches the TPC (a).

Figure 6.11 shows two movements of different size with equal GO signals. The movements have about the same duration. That is, GO controls the speed or duration regardless of movement size.

Figure 6.12 shows movements of the same size with different GO signals. The movements have different durations and contraction rates. The larger the GO signal, the shorter the duration. Thus, the above model has many of the dynamic characteristics of human motor control systems.

Figure 6.13 summarizes this model in a classical control representation. The system for  $V$  is a low-pass filter with the error  $T - P$  as input. The GO signal multiplies the output of a nonlinear system, giving  $dP/dt$ . Negative feedback produces the error signal. Integrating produces PPC. This architecture is called vector-integration-to-endpoint or VITE in the literature.

While the VITE model exhibits correct dynamics, it is incomplete because there is no sensory feedback from the muscles. The sensory feedback is needed to account for passive movements caused by, say, gravity.

During passive movements, a signal from the muscles updates the PPC. That is, the system has passive update of position or PUP. Adding a signal produced by the feedback modifies the PPC equation. The PUP model is

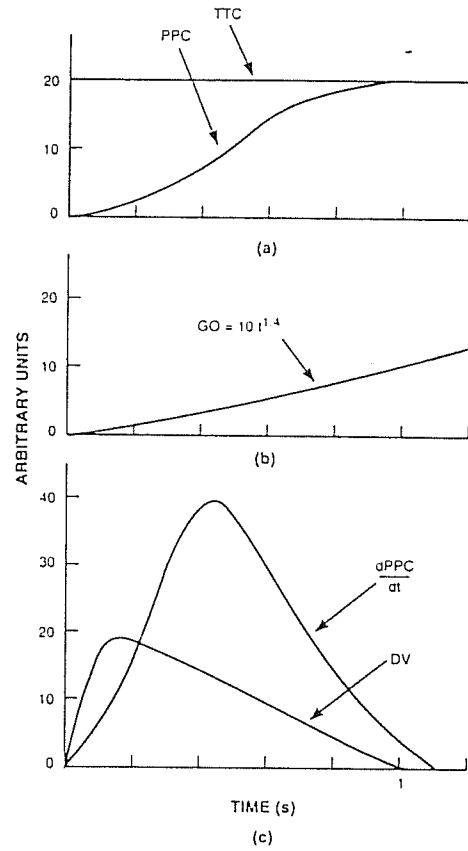


Figure 6.11 Example of a VITE solution. A step input TPC (a) and a GO signal (b) produce a DV signal (c), driving the PPC signal to the TPC (a). (From Grossberg and Bullock, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation in Grossberg (ed.) Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Reprinted with permission of The MIT Press, 1988).

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = G[V]^+ + G_p[M]^+, \quad (6.12)$$

$$\frac{dM}{dt} = -\beta M + \gamma I - ZP, \quad (6.13)$$

$$\frac{dZ}{dt} = \delta G_p(-\epsilon Z + [M]^+) \quad (6.14)$$

$$G_p = \begin{cases} G_p, & \text{if } G = 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (6.15)$$

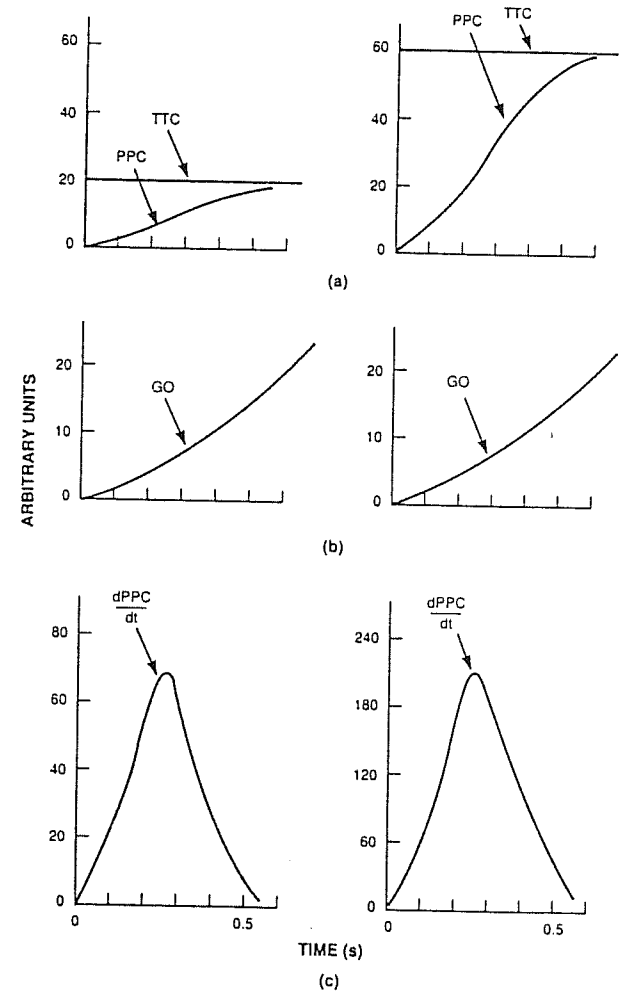


Figure 6.12 Movements of equal size and different durations and speeds have similar contraction speeds. (From Grossberg and Bullock, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation in Grossberg (ed.) Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Reprinted with permission of The MIT Press, 1988).

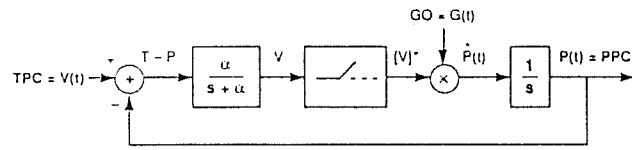


Figure 6.13 The VITE system for a single muscle group in classical control representation.

As seen,  $P$  depends on a matching signal  $M$ . The matching signal depends on the feedback,  $I$ . A LTM trace,  $Z$ , recalibrates the scale of  $P$  so that  $I$  and  $P$  correspond.

This system models the slow long-term adjustments from growth and aging. A passive GO signal,  $G_p$ , gates the LTM trace. When the muscle is active, the passive part is turned off, and the system acts as the preceding VITE NN.

Figure 6.14 shows a block diagram of the combined VITE and PUP system. This structure would be replicated for each muscle and, as discussed, different muscle combinations would produce the synergies.

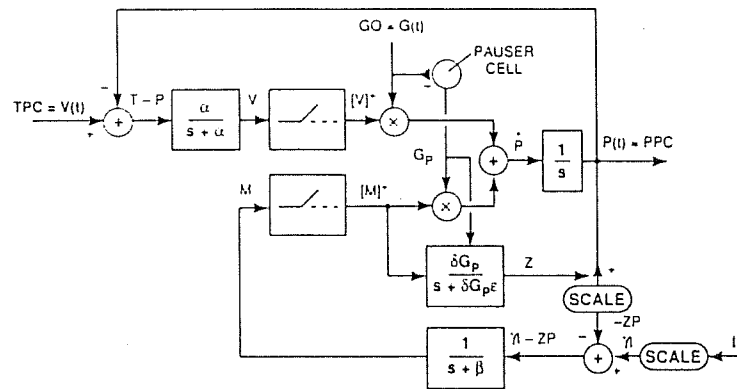


Figure 6.14 The VITE-PUP system for a single muscle group in classical control representation.

SUGGESTED REFERENCES

A. REES AND M. STERNBERG, *From Cells to Atoms*. Chapter 37 summarizes the sliding-filament model for muscle contraction. The style is fluent and easy to read.  
 M. KUPERSTEIN, *Neural Model of Adaptive Hand-Eye Coordination for Single Postures*. This is the best treatment of section 6.2. The article devotes little time to material underlying the model. Thus, results are concisely stated.

S. GROSSBERG AND M. KUPERSTEIN, *Neural Dynamics of Adaptive Sensory-Motor Control*. This book introduces a neural theory of saccadic eye movements, which are large foveation movements across the field of view. The brain regions involved include the superior colliculus, parietal cortex, oculomotor nuclei, and others. The treatment suggests models for general adaptive mapping by signals derived only from sensory receptors and motor feedback.  
 D. BULLOCK AND S. GROSSBERG, *Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation*. This reference describes the VITE and PUP systems of section 6.3. More than half of this article is concerned with the physiology to justify the modeling. The article is in the final chapter of a book covering neural network modeling research. Other topics covered are perception, cognition processing, and motor control.  
 P. GALDIANO AND S. GROSSBERG, *Vector Associative Maps: Unsupervised Real-Time Error-Based Learning and Control of Movement Trajectories*. This article extends the model of Bullock and Grossberg (section 6.3) by developing modules producing consistent TPC and PPC pairs. The learning scheme is called a vector associate map (VAM). The VAM models and ART models (described in chapter 4) represent complementary means for matching, learning, and performing in neural networks.  
 W. MILLER III, R. SUTTON, AND P. WERBOS, *Neural Networks for Control*. The literature on adaptive control systems is extensive. Several books cover neural network adaptive control systems. This reference is a good overview. In contrast to the text, most chapters of this book consider nonbiological systems.

EXERCISES

1. Apply the STE method of the text for vision-motor neural networks to a single eye and a 2-D arm. Assume two variables describe the arm as shown in figure 6.15. Write out explicitly the equations for each module of the system. Outline a training procedure.

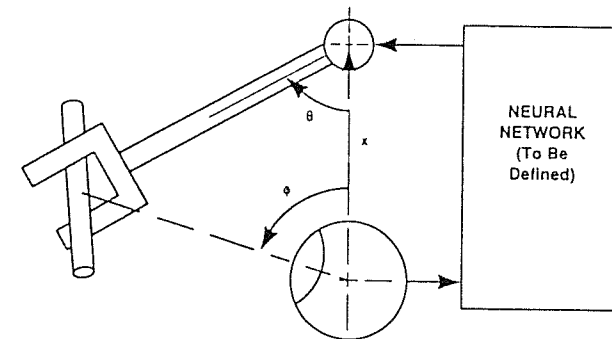


Figure 6.15 Exercise figure for eye-arm neural network.

2. Solve exercise 1 using the VITE method for neural dynamics of planned arm movements.

# Advanced Design Methods

The preceding two chapters applied elementary modules to design vision and motor control systems. This chapter resumes theory development. Nothing new is added to the physics. We gain, however, a powerful method of working with the standard models of neurons.

The chapter describes a practical method for designing NNs with fixed interconnections among the neurons. This class of NNs is useful for modeling selected biological neural groups and for use as preprocessors, feature detectors, and control modules in application systems.

The method derives from the genetic algorithm (GA), a procedure suggested by natural heredity and evolution for efficiently searching over a parameter space.

The design method avoids common simplifying assumptions, and it enables designing complex general cooperative-competitive (CC) NNs with feedback that realize (or model) designer-specified input-output functions.

Section 7.5 gives design examples of on-center/off-surround (ON CTR/OFF SUR) architectures that crudely model the simple cells in the visual cortex and are applicable as feature detectors in machine vision systems. Scaling laws are described for designing general cooperative-competitive NNs.

## 7.1 BACKGROUND ON NEURAL NETWORK DESIGN TECHNIQUES

Designing NNs for modeling and for applications is an intensive, ongoing activity reported in countless research articles. Standard NN design techniques simplify to get a tractable problem.

Common simplifying assumptions include arranging the neurons in layers, no lateral connections in a layer, and only feedforward signals between layers. Or, a neuron can be both excitatory and inhibitory. That is, the connection weights from a neuron to others, modeling synaptic transmission coupling, can be positive to some and negative to others.

These assumptions are significant restrictions, especially in modeling biological systems. Moreover, they differ from our present knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of the cerebral cortex of higher animals [21].

Nevertheless, with these assumptions, researchers have developed design methods for many kinds of NNs. For NN feature detectors, a common design is to compute the output by convolving the input pattern with a kernel matrix. The designer selects the kernel matrix so that the output measures, say, the orientation of an edge in the input pattern. The response mimics the orientation responses to illumination contrast of simple cells in the visual cortex [51].

While mathematically convenient, the method is at best a rough approximation of biological feature detectors because convolution is linear. Nonlinear feature detectors may be better, although no careful study is known to the author. Indeed, designing these nonlinear NNs is difficult. A typical robotic application with this design is by Kuperstein [57], discussed in chapter 6.

In feedforward NNs, adjusting connection weights is currently done by the simulated annealing (SA) and backpropagation (BP) methods. SA includes the Boltzmann machine [1] and is slow. BP is the most common method. Werbos [84] originated BP, and Rumelhart (1986) and other members of the PDP group [79] developed it.

Though advances continue, nevertheless, BP—and its many variations—suffer from slowness for many problems [44], besides being restricted to feedforward NNs.

Adaptive Resonance Theory (ART) architectures, discussed in chapter 4, are NNs that usually function with variable—not fixed—interconnections among the neurons. Designing ART NNs is not considered here [14,15,16].

Many applications have assemblies of fixed and variable modules, as shown in chapters 5 and 6. The variable modules, those with learning, may use an ART NN. The fixed modules—say the feature detectors—may use a NN designed by the technique described below. Thus, the NNs with fixed interconnections are important in modeling and applications.

The GA design method described below does not make the common assumptions. Thus, it should be of interest to theorists and to designers of applications. Indeed, the resulting NNs may be smaller for the same function and easier to implement in software or hardware.

## 7.2 GENETIC ALGORITHM BACKGROUND

For over a decade the GA community, originated by Holland [48], has pursued trial-and-error strategies for designing adaptive systems. The GA is a search procedure, inspired by evolution and heredity, for finding high performance structures in a complex parameter domain.

For NN design purposes, the GA is a search method for finding a good set of weights in a high-dimensional nonlinear weight space. (Degenerate forms of the GA are the well-known gradient-descent techniques, including BP.)

Holland originated two distinct GA approaches. Researchers named the two approaches—Michigan and Pittsburgh—after the communities where they were first elaborated.

In the Michigan approach a single system consists of a set of rules, or parameters. Genetic operators applied to existing rules discover new rules. The approach assigns a value to each rule, expressing the rule's fitness for reaching a payoff. Rules earn high value by achieving direct payoff in the task environment, or by setting the stage for later rules.

Thus, in the Michigan approach, the GA operates on the rules—or internal parameters—of a single system. The GA picks the “best rules” as the system adapts to an environment.

In the Pittsburgh approach many systems, each with a set of rules, compete. Holland's original book defined reproductive plans [48, pp. 90–111]. A reproductive plan maintains a set of possible systems. The plan selects an individual system according to its performance rank, modifies it by one or more genetic operators, evaluates it by the environment that contains external inputs, and then replaces a randomly selected member of the set by it.

In the Pittsburgh approach the set of systems evolves to contain members with high performance, because the better an individual performs, the more offspring it has.

The Michigan approach is most practical in on-line real-time environments because of the reduced computational loads. The Pittsburgh approach is appropriate in off-line environments where more leisurely exploration is acceptable.

In GA terminology, this chapter uses primarily a Michigan approach.

GA theory gives guidelines for constructing practical search techniques [7,25]. (A direct random search of parameter space is not practical because the trials increase exponentially with the neurons.)

The fundamental requirements are that the problem be represented by some data structure, the solutions be capable of evaluation, the advances already made be retained, and the population of retained structures be increased.

In GA applications the major problems are finding a convenient representation of the system, devising genetic operators that produce good solutions, and defining payoff functions.

Following these guidelines, define a GA as follows. First, create a set of structures—generation—that try to solve a problem. Second, manipulate the structures—parents—by a set of genetic operators (traditionally crossover, inversion, and mutation) to create a new set of structures. Third, evaluate the new structures on how well they solve the problem. Fourth, save the best set of structures—the next generation. Fifth, repeat the process until a structure produces an acceptable solution to the problem.

Researchers have applied the GA to design simple NNs. Recent examples are Miller, Todd, and Hegde [68], who assume a feedforward NN. A matrix of digits denotes the nature of interconnections among the neurons. The GA picks rows of this matrix and swaps with the parent. The resulting NN is trained by BP and evaluated.

Whitley and Hansen [85] represent a feedforward NN in binary form with 4 or 8 bits for each connecting weight. They concatenate the weight bits to form a string, which an adaptive mutation operator manipulates. They then train the NN by BP and evaluate it.

Harp, Samad, and Guha [37] also represent connections by a bit string, use the standard mutation operator, and train the system by BP. Their studies, considering only simple examples like the XOR problem, assume feedforward NNs, BP-related performance metrics, and binary string representations for the connection weights.

Cellier [19], in a chapter entitled “Artificial NNs and Genetic Algorithms,” describes a GA method that defines four classes of values for the weights ranging from very small to very large. He assigns each weight to a size class and arranges the size labels (A, B, C, D) in a string, for example, ABACCBADBCBBADCA. The number of labels is the number of weights. The method generates a hundred strings to form a genetic pool. Then he applies the crossover and mutation GA operators to produce new strings that they evaluate and sort. He applies this GA method to design feedforward NNs with 67 unknown parameters.

The remainder of this chapter describes a method for designing NNs with fixed connection weights. It demonstrates the method by nontrivial examples—75 neurons, 1920 connection weights—of orientation detectors modeling simple cell modules in the visual cortex of primates. Moreover, the design examples satisfy important biological constraints.

### 7.3 FORMULATION

1. **Activation Equation.** Suppose a set of neurons  $\{v_i\}$  form a feature detector module. Describe each neuron by equations that roughly model the biological processes. Following chapter 2, characterize the  $i$ th neuron,  $v_i$ , by its activation level,  $x_i$ , and by its connections with other neurons. Give the connections by a set of coupling coefficients,  $\{Z_{ji}\}$ .

For the activation level, or short-term memory (STM), assume an equation for  $v_i$  of the form

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = -\alpha x_i + \sum_j Z_{ji} f(x_j) + I_i, \quad \forall i, \quad (7.1)$$

where

- $x_i$  = activation of the  $i$ th neuron,
- $Z_{ji}$  = long-term memory (LTM) trace from the  $j$ th neuron to the  $i$ th neuron,
- $I_i$  = external input to the  $i$ th neuron,
- $f(\cdot)$  = a nonlinear signal function,
- $\alpha$  = relaxation time constant parameter.

This equation, called the additive STM equation, is basic in NN research and is adequate for many NN designs. (If desired, replace the additive STM equation by the shunting STM equation for a better model of the biology—see chapter 2).

Assume the coupling coefficients (or the LTM traces) are constant and unknown.

For this class of NNs with fixed interconnections, the main problem is to find a set of weights,  $\{Z_{ji}\}$ , satisfying prescribed I/O relations.



To illustrate the method, the following discussion considers a feature detector module. Designing NNs for other functions using a similar method follows.

A simple design of a feature detector module gives a single output for some spatial activation pattern defined on an array of input neurons. The output could show the, say, angular orientation of the pattern.

For a feature detector assume input patterns defined on  $M$  input neurons,  $N$  hidden (internal) neurons, and a single output neuron. Thus, each input pattern is characterized by the activation level of a single output neuron, as shown in chapter 5, figure 5.9.

The input pattern may be binary or gray, that is, the inputs,  $I_i$ , may have values 0 or 1 (binary) or, say, 0, 1, 2, ..., 255 (7 bits of gray).

Assume no feedback from the hidden neurons or from the output neuron to the input neurons. Nevertheless, assume feedback among the hidden neurons and assume direct connections from the input neurons to the output neuron.

For this example, write a set of STM equations from (7.1) as follows.

- Input Neurons

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = -\alpha x_i + I_i, \quad i = 1, \dots, M. \quad (7.2)$$

- Hidden Neurons

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = -\alpha x_i + \sum_{j=1}^{M+N} Z_{ji} f(x_j), \quad i = 1, \dots, N. \quad (7.3)$$

- Output Neuron

$$\frac{dx_0}{dt} = -\alpha x_0 + \sum_{j=1}^{M+N} Z_{j0} f(x_j). \quad (7.4)$$

2. Matrix Formulation. Write the STM equations of the hidden neurons as

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = -\alpha x_i + \sum_{j=1}^N Z_{ji} f(x_j) + \sum_{k=1}^M Z'_{ki} f(I_k), \quad i = 1, \dots, N, \quad (7.5)$$

where

$Z_{ji}$  = LTM trace of the hidden neurons,

$Z'_{ki}$  = LTM trace from the input neurons to the hidden neurons.

Assume  $\alpha = 1$  (equivalent to rescaling the other variables). Then, the input neuron activations approach the external inputs, that is,  $x_k \rightarrow I_k$ ,  $k = 1, \dots, M$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  in the steady state. Assume no self-sustained oscillations.

In the steady state the hidden neuron activations become

$$x_i = \sum_{j=1}^N Z_{ji} f(x_j) + \sum_{k=1}^M Z'_{ki} f(I_k), \quad i = 1, \dots, N. \quad (7.6)$$

### Sec. 7.3 Formulation

For convenience, introduce matrix notation with standard state-variable symbols. Let

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_N \end{bmatrix}. \quad (7.7)$$

Here  $\mathbf{X}$  is the activation vector of the hidden neurons, written as a  $N \times 1$  matrix.

The steady-state hidden neuron equation, (7.6) in matrix notation becomes

$$\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{X}) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{I}) \quad (7.8)$$

where

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} Z_{11} & \cdots & Z_{N1} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ Z_{1N} & \cdots & Z_{NN} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.9)$$

is a constant  $N \times N$  matrix,

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} Z'_{11} & \cdots & Z'_{M1} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ Z'_{1N} & \cdots & Z'_{MN} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.10)$$

is a constant  $N \times M$  matrix,

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{X}) = \begin{bmatrix} f(x_1) \\ \vdots \\ f(x_N) \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.11)$$

is an  $N \times 1$  matrix with the signal function applied to each element, and

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{I}) = \begin{bmatrix} f(I_1) \\ \vdots \\ f(I_M) \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.12)$$

is an  $M \times 1$  matrix. (Note the indices in  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are reversed from the usual matrix notation because of how the terms are defined.)

No assumptions are made about the kind of signal function in this formulation. The model also is a "sum-of-sigmoids," not the usual simplifying approximation of "sigmoid-of-sums."

Let the steady-state output be  $Z$  (not the LTM trace), that is,  $Z = x_0(t \rightarrow \infty)$ . Then, (7.4) gives

$$Z = \sum_{j=1}^N Z_{j0} f(x_j) + \sum_{k=1}^M Z'_{k0} f(I_k) \tag{7.13}$$

which in matrix form is

$$Z = Cf(X) + Df(I) \tag{7.14}$$

where

$$C = [ Z_{10} \ \cdots \ Z_{N0} ] \tag{7.15}$$

is a constant  $1 \times N$  matrix, and

$$D = [ Z'_{10} \ \cdots \ Z'_{M0} ] \tag{7.16}$$

is a constant  $1 \times M$  matrix. Thus, four matrices,  $\{A, B, C, D\}$ , describe the NN.

To design a NN with given I/O characteristics, determine matrices  $\{A, B, C, D\}$ . In the GA method, copies of the system with random changes are simply copies of the matrix set with random changes in their elements. The matrix elements play a role analogous to the DNA molecules in biological evolution.

Given a system described by the set  $\{A, B, C, D\}$  and an input matrix,  $I$ , solve for the steady-state activation vector,  $X$ , of the hidden system (7.8). Compute the output  $Z$  by (7.14) once  $X$  is known.

**3. Assumptions for Mimicking Biological Neural Networks.** To illustrate the design method, consider a problem that is difficult by other methods. Assume the NN is to model—crudely—biological feature detectors such as those found in the human primary visual cortex. (Such a NN is useful for applications because, presumably, its performance is like the high performance of natural vision systems.)

To model biological NNs, follow experimental findings. Crick and Asanuma [21] discuss assumptions for mimicking biological NNs, summarized here in the first two items. Assume the following for feature detectors:

- Each neuron is type I (excitatory) or type II (inhibitory) and cannot be both types. (An exception are amacrine cells of the rabbit retina that may be excitatory and inhibitory [69].)
- A neuron cannot excite or inhibit itself by axon signals.
- The NNs are in an ON CTR/OFF SUR architecture. (Extension to the more general CC architecture is below.)

With these assumptions, the system matrices for ON CTR/OFF SUR NNs have the following properties, shown in figure 7.1:

1.  $A$  has zero diagonal components,
2.  $A$  and  $C$  have negative or zero elements,
3.  $B$  and  $D$  have positive or zero elements,
4. The columns of  $A$  give the lateral inhibition to other hidden neurons (for example, column 1 is the inhibition of neuron  $v_1$  on the other neurons, and so on for the other columns).

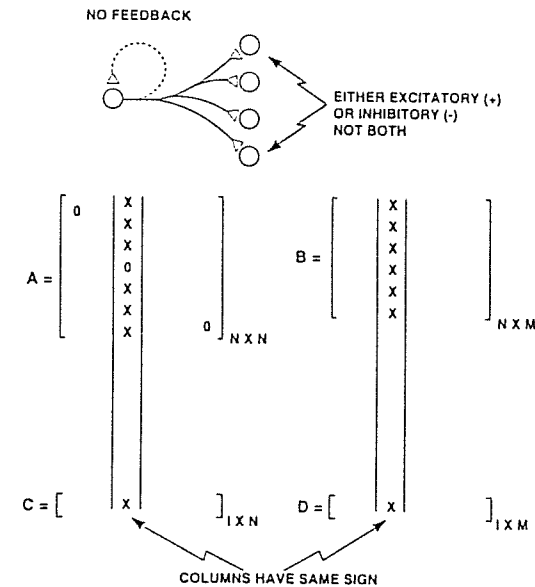


Figure 7.1 Structure of the matrices,  $\{A, B, C, D\}$ , characterizing feature detector neural networks that have neurons with properties from anatomy and physiology.

These constraints are difficult to impose in standard design methods; however, they can be easily accommodated with this method.

Matrix  $A$  gives the connections among  $N$  hidden neurons. The zero diagonal elements of  $A$  depict no connections of a neuron with itself. Matrix  $B$  gives the connections from  $M$  input neurons to the hidden neurons. Matrix  $C$  gives connections from the hidden neurons to a single output neuron. Matrix  $D$  gives connections from the inputs to the output.

A column of  $A$  and the corresponding element of  $C$  give the connection weights of a hidden neuron to the others. The elements in the indicated columns have the same sign because natural neurons are excitatory (positive elements) or inhibitory (negative elements). The elements of  $B$  and  $D$  are positive.

For ON CTR/OFF SUR architectures, the elements of  $A$  and  $C$  are negative. For CC architectures, the elements of  $A$  and  $C$  are mixtures of positive and negative values, with the diagonal elements of  $A$  still zero.

## 7.4 DESIGN PROCEDURE

By the GA, the computational steps for the design procedure are as follows:

1. Randomly choose a beginning matrix set, {A, B, C, D}, with the properties shown in figure 7.1.
2. Copy the parent set {A, B, C, D}. In each copy, randomly select columns of the parent. Randomly change the elements of the selected columns subject to the constraints. In GA terminology, the random changes are by a mutation operator (see example in section 7.5).
3. Define input training patterns. For each training pattern and each copy, solve for the output. (*Note:* A solution may not always exist—see below.)
4. Select the best copy according to a payoff criterion (see below). Make this copy the survivor.
5. Using the survivor as the parent for the next generation, repeat steps 2 to 4.
6. Continue until the payoff criterion is met. The surviving system, {A, B, C, D}, describes the NN.

Figure 7.2 shows a flow diagram of the procedure.

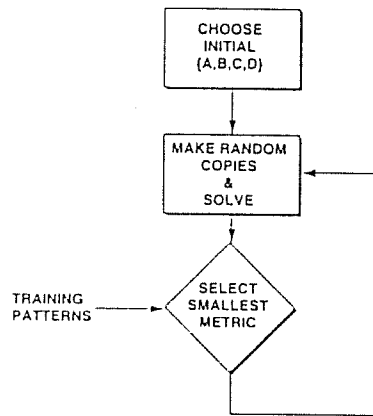


Figure 7.2 Computational flow diagram of the design method.

4. Payoff criteria. Defining a good payoff function is essential. For illustration, choose a metric that measures the distance (error) of the output from a desired output for each training pattern. Many metrics—or more precisely pseudometrics—are applicable.

A practical metric specifies that for each input training pattern, the output response lies in a band of upper and lower thresholds. The designer specifies the thresholds. Formulate the HI-LO metric as follows.

For  $N_p$  training patterns, the metric,  $d$ , is

$$d = \sum_{i=1}^{N_p} (TLO_i \leq Z_i \leq THI_i). \quad (7.17)$$

## Sec. 7.4 Design Procedure

where

$Z_i$  = output for the  $i$ th input training pattern,

$TLO_i$  = lower bound for the  $i$ th input pattern,

$THI_i$  = upper bound for the  $i$ th input pattern,

and

$$(TLO_i \leq Z_i \leq THI_i) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } TLO_i \leq Z_i \text{ and } Z_i \leq THI_i, \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.18)$$

A second practical metric specifies that the output be above a passband threshold for certain patterns and below a stopband threshold for the other patterns. Formulate the PASS-STOP criterion as follows. For  $N_1$  PASS patterns and  $N_2$  STOP patterns, with  $N_p = N_1 + N_2$ , the metric,  $d$ , is

$$d = \sum_{i=1}^{N_1} (Z_i \geq T_i) + \sum_{j=1}^{N_2} (Z_j \leq T_j), \quad (7.19)$$

where

$T_i$  = selection thresholds,

$i = 1, \dots, N_p$ ,

and

$$(Z_i \geq T_i) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } Z_i \geq T_i, \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.20)$$

$$(Z_i \leq T_i) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } Z_i \leq T_i, \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.21)$$

The following inequalities hold for these two metrics:

$$0 \leq d \leq N_p. \quad (7.22)$$

The condition  $d = N_p$  means the system, {A, B, C, D}, satisfies none of the payoff criteria (maximum error). The condition  $d = 0$  means the system satisfies the selection criterion and that a solution has been reached. In practice the metric,  $d$ , starts at  $N_p$  (or smaller) and monotonically decreases to zero.

5. Solve the activation equation. To implement step 3 of the algorithm, for each set {A, B, I}, solve the equation

$$X = Af(X) + Bf(I). \quad (7.23)$$

Three outcomes are possible when trying to solve (7.23): No solutions may exist, a single solution may exist, or multiple solutions may exist. (The three outcomes are easily seen by assuming I is binary and solving (7.23) by hand for a low-dimension system.)

Many authors have studied solving nonlinear matrix equations such as (7.23) [24]. The method used here is a combination of operator decomposition followed by a recursion such as those in fixed-point theorems.

Following Adomian and Adomian [3], the first two terms of an operator decomposition solution,  $X_0$  and  $X_1$ , are

$$X_0 = Bf(I), \quad (7.24)$$

and

$$X_1 = A(X_0) + X_0 \quad (7.25)$$

The recursion is

$$X(n+1) = Af(X(n)) + Bf(I) \quad (7.26)$$

where

- $X_1$  = first trial solution,
- $X(n)$  = current trial solution for  $X$ ,
- $X(n+1)$  = next trial solution for  $X$ .

The recursion is continued until  $X(n+1) = X(n)$ , or fails after fixed tries.

This recursion converges to a solution if and only if the operator defined by the right-side of (7.23) is a contraction operator [24]. In practice, an operator may be a contraction in some subspaces and not in other subspaces.

For the examples below, the first  $X_1$  produced by operator decomposition is in a contraction subspace for about 90 percent of the choices of  $\{A, B, I\}$ . It typically takes seven to ten recursions to reach a solution (when it exists) of the activation equation (7.23), that is, to reach  $X(n+1) = X(n)$ . (This scheme for solving (7.23) is preferable to one applying only the operator decomposition method for NNs with many hidden neurons. For small systems with, say, ten or less hidden neurons, the operator decomposition method gives solutions after computing less than four terms. See [3] for a description of the operator decomposition method.)

## 7.5 EXAMPLES

The first design example is an ON CTR/OFF SUR NN sensitive to horizontal binary patterns on a square array of neurons that has a resolution of  $45^\circ$ . Common design procedures for this problem have simplified topologies or applied ad hoc methods.

(An example of an ad hoc method for this problem is to sum the ON input neurons in each row of an input square array and pick the maximum. Similarly, compute the sums for the two diagonal and vertical directions for measuring the "response strengths" in those directions. Comparing the four direction values measures "pattern orientation." This orientation detector, however, is unsatisfactory because patterns can be easily constructed with unreasonable responses.)

Table 7.1 shows the assumed parameters for the GA design example. The example assumes an input pattern defined on  $7 \times 7$  or 49 input neurons. (A NN with an angular resolution of, say,  $10^\circ$  would have more input neurons and could also be designed by this method.) The hidden system has 25 neurons.

TABLE 7.1. INPUT PARAMETERS FOR DESIGNING A HORIZONTAL FEATURE DETECTOR USING AN ON-CENTER-OFF-SURROUND NEURAL NETWORK

Input neurons ( $M$ )	$7 \times 7$ (49)
Hidden neurons ( $N$ )	25
Copies per generation	10
Fraction of weights changed	
Per copy	1/3
Search range	$0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots, \pm 10$
High band	50 to 100
Low band	-100 to 10

Starting with a random set  $\{A, B, C, D\}$  for the first generation, at each generation ten copies are made of the parent set.

For each copy, a third of the matrix elements (weights) are randomly changed by selecting integer values over the range  $-10$  to  $+10$ , subject to the constraints given in section 7.3.

Assume a HI-LO metric for the training patterns with some of the outputs in a high band and the others in a low band. That is, the desired output response to the high (horizontal) training patterns is 50 to 100. The desired response to the low (nonhorizontal) training patterns is  $-100$  to 10.

Row-by-row scanning produces the input vector,  $I$ , for each training pattern. That is,  $I_1$  to  $I_7$  are the first row,  $I_8$  to  $I_{14}$  are the second row, and  $I_{43}$  to  $I_{49}$  are the seventh row. The example determines 1924 coefficients for this NN. For simplicity, assume the signal function is a unit step.

Compute the HI-LO metrics of the ten copies and compare them with the metric of the parent set. If an offspring metric is below the parent metric, the offspring replaces the parent set for the next generation.

Figure 7.3 shows 12 training patterns. For a horizontal detector assume the desired responses are high (50 to 100) to the horizontal patterns and are low ( $-100$  to 10) to the others. As seen, training is on three horizontal patterns and nine other patterns. Each training pattern has about two hidden neurons.

The design algorithm was coded in the APL\*PLUS programming language and run on an 8-MHz IBM PC/AT machine. Figure 7.4 shows the history of the metric as the system evolves to a solution in about 600 generations. The metric started at  $d = 10$  and ended at  $d = 1$  at 600 generations. The one remaining error was a response above the high threshold, and so the run was stopped.

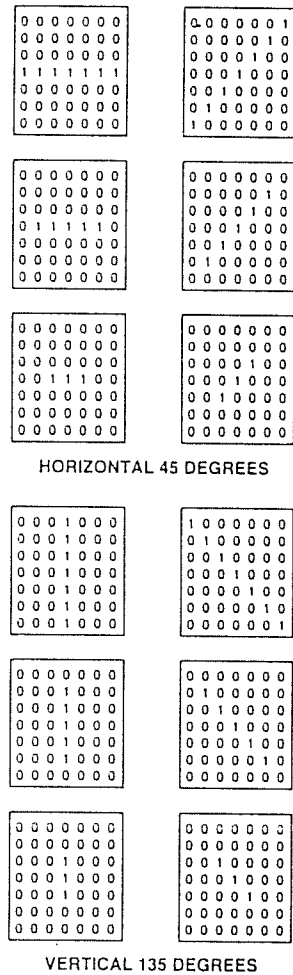


Figure 7.3 Binary training patterns for a design example of an on-center/off-surround architecture feature detector with an angular resolution of 45°.

Figure 7.5 shows the resulting system's response to the training patterns. It shows that the high-to-low responses—the signal-to-noise ratio—is above 5, corresponding to the responses of horizontal-to-nonhorizontal training patterns.

The second design example is an ON CTR/OFF SUR NN sensitive to 45° binary patterns on a square array of neurons with a resolution of 45°. All parameters are the same as in the horizontal example. The payoff criterion is different.

For this NN, the high responses are the 45° training patterns, and the others have a low response.

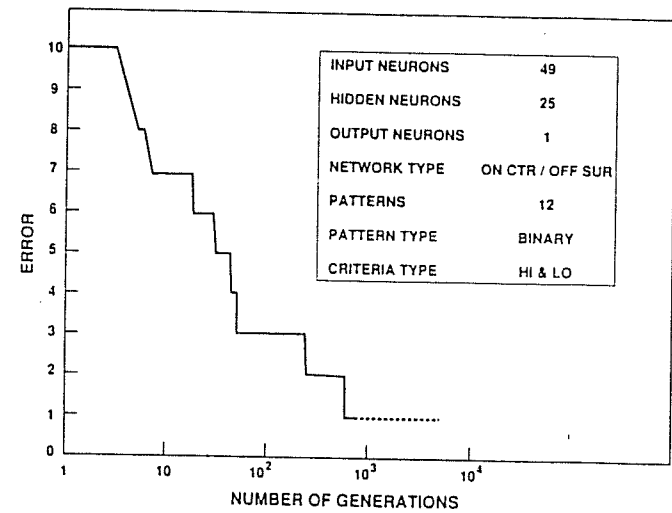


Figure 7.4 Time history of the error measuring deviation of the outputs of 12 training patterns from specified outputs. The box shows assumptions for this design example of a horizontal detector with an on-center/off-surround architecture.

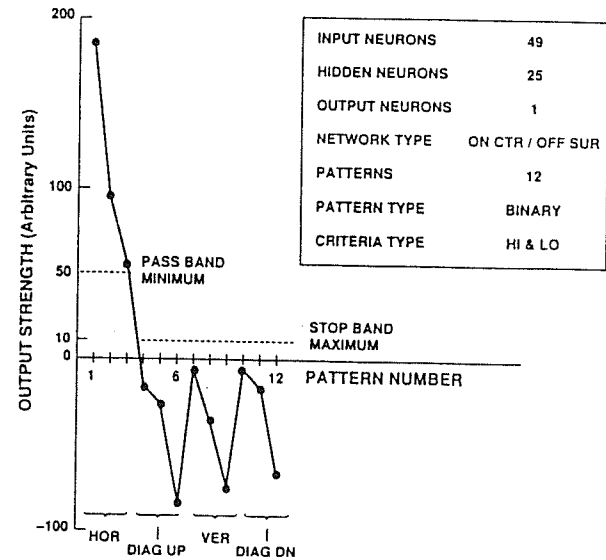


Figure 7.5 Response of a horizontal feature detector to 12 training patterns.

Figure 7.6 shows the responses of a diagonal feature detector to the training patterns. Thus, the method easily produces designs for orientation detectors (with  $45^\circ$  angular resolution) satisfying biological constraints.

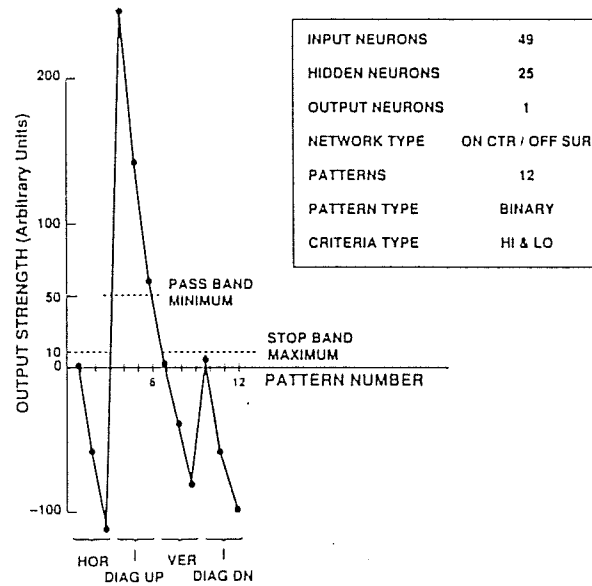


Figure 7.6 Response of a  $45^\circ$  diagonal feature detector to 12 training patterns.

The third design example is a feature detector NN that has gray input images. This example is like the preceding examples in most respects.

The main difference is modifying for gray levels in the input. For gray responsiveness, assume a piecewise linear signal function with saturation. (Other signal functions preserving the grayness could be used.)

The activation equation (7.8) becomes

$$X = Af_1(X) + Bf_2(I) \quad (7.27)$$

and the output equation (7.14) becomes

$$Z = Cf_1(X) + Df_2(I), \quad (7.28)$$

where  $f_1(\cdot)$  may be a unit step like before and  $f_2(\cdot)$  is a piecewise-linear signal with saturation such as

$$f_2(X) = \begin{cases} 0, & X < 0 \\ X, & 0 \leq X \leq 1 \\ 1, & X > 1. \end{cases} \quad (7.29)$$

A summary of recent work [42] that used gray inputs in the machine vision (MV) system described in chapter 5 follows.

First, preprocessing scales the input values to lie in the interval  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ . Second, produce 12 gray training patterns, analogous to those shown in figure 7.3. The NN is sensitive to gradients (increasing or decreasing) in four directions with these training patterns. Third, apply the GA design method with a payoff function that is sensitive to gradients in selected directions.

The results are like those shown in figures 7.5 and 7.6, that is, high responses in a selected direction and low responses in the other directions. Harvey, DiCaprio, and Heinemann [42] describe applying these feature detector NNs in a complete MV system. (A brief description of the system is also in [41], along with references to test results.)

## 7.6 SCALING LAWS FOR COOPERATIVE-COMPETITIVE NEURAL NETWORKS

As seen, parameters—like those in table 7.1—must be chosen so that the payoff function can be satisfied by the search. While the preceding section illustrates the method, choosing the parameters is of practical interest for minimizing computational time and for designing the more general CC NNs.

The CC NNs are more general NNs, and as a result they can satisfy I/O requirements that ON CTR/OFF SUR NNs cannot. To produce rough guidelines for the parameters, many design exercises of CC NN orientation detectors were run.

In a CC NN, the hidden neurons may be type I (excitatory) or type II (inhibitory). (In comparison, the ON CTR/OFF SUR NNs in the preceding section have only type II hidden neurons.) The extension is straightforward.

For CC NNs change the system matrix properties for ON CTR/OFF SUR NNs as follows (see section 7.2):

1. Property (1) still holds.
2. Change properties (2) and (3) so that the corresponding columns of A and C and B and D have the same sign.

Minimizing computation time is desirable in practice. Two important parameters in the algorithm are the hidden neurons and the copies per generation.

Write a general relationship assuming a power law

$$N_g \propto N^a N_c^b \quad (7.30)$$

where

- $N_g$  = generations,
- $N$  = hidden neurons,
- $N_c$  = copies per generation.

Figure 7.7 shows the generations needed to find a solution as a function of the hidden neurons. The vertical axis shows the generations needed in the design algorithm from

many exercises to satisfy the payoff function as the hidden neurons were varied, with other architectural parameters fixed.

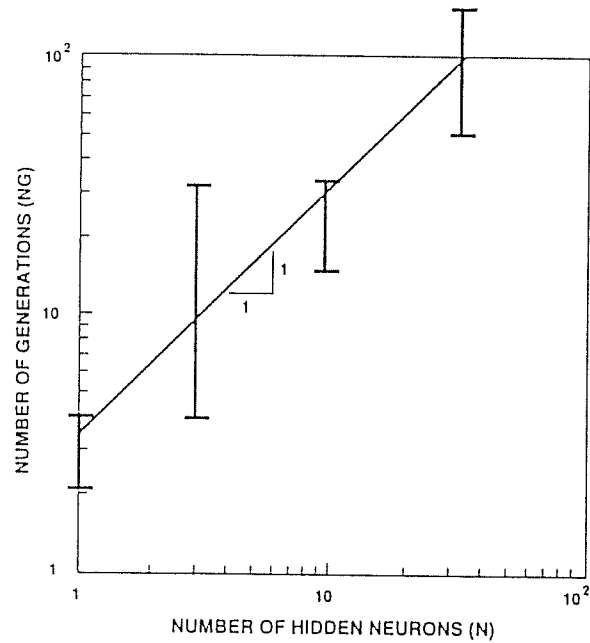


Figure 7.7 Scaling for the design generations versus the hidden neurons for cooperative-competitive architectures. The brackets show the range of the design examples.

Figure 7.8 shows the generations needed as a function of the copies made per generation. Again, the vertical axis shows the generations needed in the design algorithm from many exercises to satisfy the payoff function as the copies were varied, with other architectural parameters fixed. The brackets show the range of the generations needed to reach a solution. (The figures are from 22 points.)

As shown, for the CC NNs,  $\alpha \approx 1$  and  $\beta \approx -3/2$ . These approximate values are from limited tests and are meant as rough guidelines. Designing many NNs with parameters over a broader range remains to be done.

At first approximation the computational time varies like  $N \times N_c^{-1/2}$ , because the computer time is proportional to the copies, that is, to  $N_g \times N_c$ . The mutation process is random, so the generations needed for solution are random. Thus, the guideline (7.30) shows the average generations.

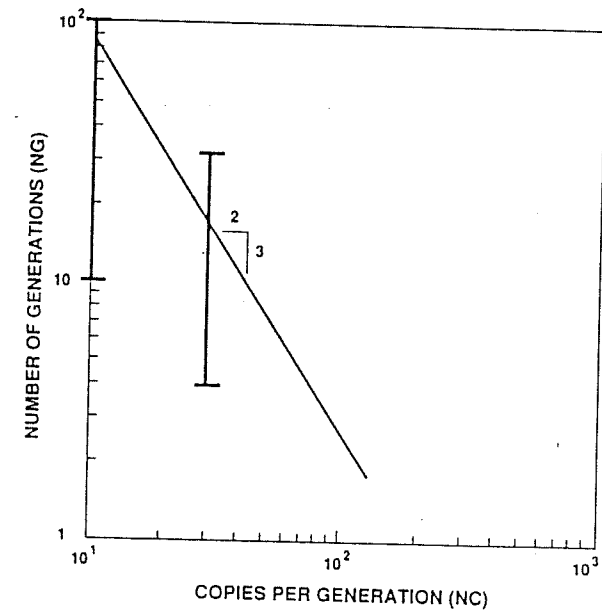


Figure 7.8 Scaling for the design generations versus the copies made each generation for cooperative-competitive architectures. The brackets show the range of the design examples.

## 7.7 DISCUSSION

This chapter gives a unified, practical method for designing complex, fixed interconnected NNs that realizes designer-specified I/O characteristics and (if desired) meets constraints emerging from the experimental studies of natural brains. By a GA, the chapter gives a convenient representation, a genetic operator, and a payoff function.

The chapter also describes designing CC and ON CTR/OFF SUR NNs that model orientation detectors in the visual cortex and that meet specified I/O functions according to two criteria. Moreover, examples show the method produces NN designs with good output signal-to-noise margins. Finally, some rough guidelines for selecting parameters are given for CC NNs.

The method has several extensions of interest to theorists and application designers. In the applications, designers can apply the technique to multiple-output NNs with specified I/O properties. Designs have been done of NNs with two outputs for a control system (see problems). For the theorists, researchers can model veto cells and neural systems with diffuse inputs, described in Crick and Asanuma [21].

While this chapter describes a few examples, and those not thoroughly, nevertheless, the sheer simplicity and flexibility of the method suggest further study is worthwhile.

#### SUGGESTED REFERENCES

J. HOLLAND, *Adaptation in Natural and Artificial Systems*. The literature on the genetic algorithm is extensive. One of the best is the original work by Holland. The work contains much material not readily available elsewhere. Discussions of the underlying concepts are long and elaborate. It lays the foundations of the Michigan and Pittsburgh approaches.

*Proceedings of International Conference on Genetic Algorithms and Their Applications*. This conference series illustrates applying GA to many fields, including NNs. The series is recommended for background.

G. ADOMIAN AND G. E. ADOMIAN, *A Global Method for Solution of Complex Systems*. This is a tutorial paper introducing a method for solving dynamic systems that may be strongly nonlinear. The method is applicable to a wide class of problems in physics, engineering, and other disciplines.

#### EXERCISES

1. Starting with the text design method, describe a NN design technique for M-inputs, two-outputs. Include a description of the payoff criterion.
2. Assume designs of NN edge detectors have been found for  $0^\circ$  and  $45^\circ$  (see text examples). Using these NN modules, develop a block diagram for feature detector modules that have an angular resolution of  $45^\circ$ . That is, they measure the edge strength of input patterns at angles  $0^\circ$ ,  $45^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$ , and  $135^\circ$ . (*Hint*: Rotate the input patterns.)

# 8

## Brain Control and Modulation Systems

NN theory is contributing to understanding normal and abnormal behavior in human beings. The advantages of the NN approach lie in its deeper insights, primarily from the ideas of pattern mixing, matching, stability, switching, and enhancement. As a result, we are led to a new view of mental functioning. This chapter presents an overview of global brain-mind functioning and relates it to NNs.

The NN viewpoint is also of interest for constructing theories of complex processing and for being potentially of considerable help in treating mental illness. Indeed, a NN theory of human behavior serves as a point of departure for theories about complex networks. The equal status accorded to thought and neuron-activation patterns suggests designing machines that think and understand.

### 8.1 INTRODUCTION

Researchers have produced hypotheses connecting NNs and human brain-mind functioning, all having some experimental support. First, all mental functioning is pattern processing by neuron activity. This includes perception, emotion, cognition, learning, memory, and motor control.

Second, a central control system coordinates the pattern processing in different brain modules. Monamine neurotransmitters, primarily, exert control chemically. In each brain module the monamine neurotransmitters perform many functions. They regulate pattern



formation, stabilize node encoding, mix sensory inputs, and match short-term and long-term memory traces.

Third, mental disorders, such as manic-depression and schizophrenia, are malfunctions of the control system. Thus, mental disorders are breakdowns in pattern processing. Indeed, a task just starting connects a mental illness to a pattern processing dysfunction and then to a control system malfunction.

Fourth, NN theory describes pattern development and processing in human beings.

Thus, NNs, control theory, and physiology together increase the understanding of human behavior and psychology.

The next sections develop these hypotheses.

## 8.2 NEUROTRANSMITTERS

A basic issue in neuroscience is how the brain-mind represents information. The NN answer is that patterns of neural activity—established by LTM traces—represent information. Neurotransmitters in the synapses produce the LTM traces.

(Current NN theory may be expanded to include new results in cellular and molecular biology summarized by Black [8]. The NN models discussed in this text are a first approximation to better models—see section 2.4.)

The traditional biochemical view of the synapse considers neurotransmitters for control and for processing. The neurotransmitters for information processing have receptors with fast (1 ms) response times. Those neurotransmitters for control have receptors with slow (100 ms and longer) response times.

The two classes of fast and slow neurotransmitters have other distinguishing characteristics. Table 8.1 shows a classification of neurotransmitters, their effect, and their function. Information processing in the CNS comes from the  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) or acetylcholine (ACh) neurotransmitters.

TABLE 8.1. CLASSIFICATION OF NEUROTRANSMITTERS

Response Time	Effect	Drug Class	Principal Molecule	Function
Fast (1 ms)	Excitatory		Glutamate	Information Processing
	Inhibitory		GABA	
Slow (100 ms to 100 s)	Excitatory	Neuropeptides	—	Control and modulation
		Monamines	DA NA	
	Inhibitory	Neuropeptides	—	5-HT ACh
		Monamines	—	

DA = dopamine; NA = norepinephrine; 5-HT = serotonin;  
ACh = acetylcholine; GABA =  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid.

Control and modulation in the CNS come from amines such as norepinephrine (NA), serotonin (5-HT), and dopamine (DA). They modulate by changing the effects of other

neurotransmitters, that is, by making other neurotransmitters less effective, or preventing release altogether.

Indeed, two different neurotransmitters, such as an amine and a peptide, can coexist in the same synapses. Moreover, the mode of action for control can be quite different from the punctual actions of GABA or ACh for processing.

The neurotransmitter release sites may not be close to the postsynaptic membrane. Transmitters may diffuse widely to affect distant targets and thus, influence many neurons rather uniformly. Table 8.2 shows the control and modulation function of common neurotransmitters in mammalian CNS.

TABLE 8.2. SUMMARY OF NEUROTRANSMITTERS FOR CONTROL AND MODULATION OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Transmitter	Effect	Source	Target	Action
DA	+	SN	Basal Ganglia Cortex	Damage of SN causes movement disorders. Parkinson's (DA ↓) Schizophrenia (DA ↑)
NA	+	LC	Cerebellar Purkinje cells Cerebral cortex Thalamus	Destruction of LC changes development of visual cortex.
5-HT	-	RN	Ubiquitous No synaptic specialization	Level of wakefulness Pain sensation

DA = dopamine; NA = norepinephrine; 5-HT = serotonin;  
SN = substantia nigra; LC = locus coeruleus; RN = raphe nuclei;  
(+) = excitatory; (-) = inhibitory.

Figure 8.1 shows the molecular structure of common neurotransmitters. Biogenic amines, that is, those needed for the life process, include 5-HT, NA, DA, and epinephrine (EP). Of these amines, the catecholamines contain a benzene ring with two adjacent hydroxyl groups.

Enzymes synthesize the catechols from dietary tyrosine in the following sequence: tyrosine  $\rightarrow$  L-Dopa  $\rightarrow$  DA  $\rightarrow$  NA  $\rightarrow$  EP [8, p. 27].

A common feature of mammalian brains is discrete neurons groups sharing the same neurotransmitter. Thus, populations of neurons containing 5-HT, NA, and DA aggregate in separate clusters.

Small groups of nerve cells in discrete locations in the CNS are the principal—and sometimes the only—sources of axons containing 5-HT, DA, and NA. The axons branch extensively to supply widespread areas of the brain, with profound consequences.

Synapses continually secrete neurotransmitters, as described in chapter 2. Indeed, how the brain produces and transports neurotransmitters is an active research area. Neuro-

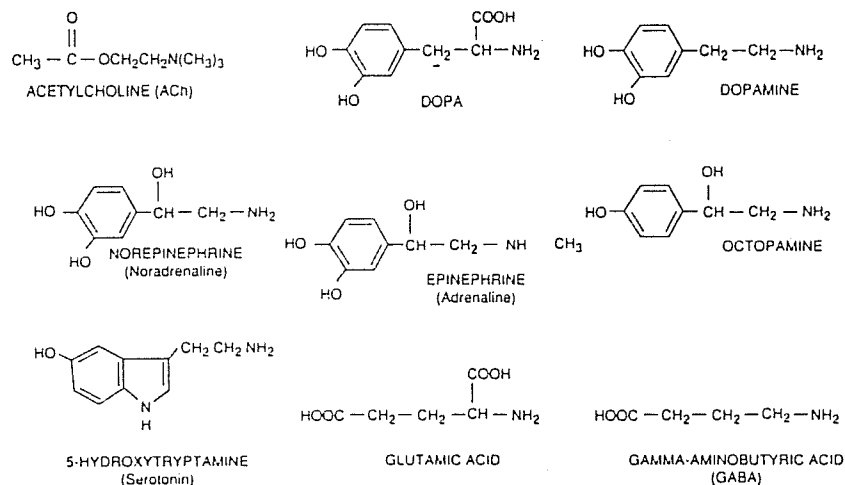


Figure 8.1 Chemical structures of neurotransmitters. (From Kuffler et al. *From Neuron to Brain*. Reprinted by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc., 1984).

transmitters may be shipped ready-made to the synapses from another site. They may be assembled from parts from the cell body. Or, they may be synthesized at the synapse.

For example, tryptophan—the amino acid precursor of 5-HT—is brought to the presynaptic neuron through the blood. 5-HT is synthesized from tryptophan inside the axon terminal and stored in vesicles.

### 8.3 THE MONAMINE CONTROL SYSTEM

Experiments show that the monamine neurotransmitters control and modulate the activities of different brain modules. Evidence of monamine effects on global mental functions is also well-known.

At least three monamines dominate. They are DA, NA, and 5-HT. DA and NA are excitatory; 5-HT is primarily inhibitory.

Summarizing [46], anatomical evidence in mammals shows a direct pathway from the limbic system through the nucleus accumbens (NAC) to the pallidum. Researchers believe the pallidum is the motor output for the basal ganglia.

This pathway initiates and executes goal-oriented behavior. For this reason it is called the execution pathway, shown in figure 8.2.

The execution pathway turns impulses produced by the limbic system into motor outputs to the spinal column. The origin of limbic and neocortex outputs in turn involves higher-level processing.

### Sec. 8.3 The Monamine Control System

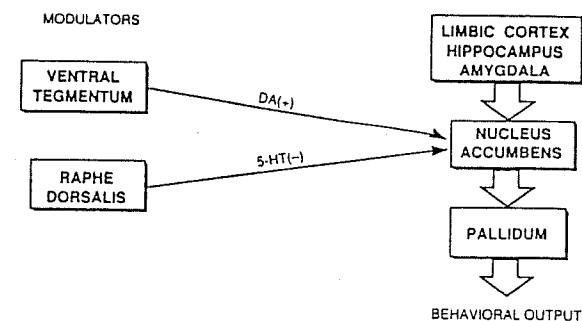


Figure 8.2 Model for the execution pathway producing and controlling behaviors. (From Hestenes, *A Neural Network of Theory of Manic-Depressive Illness* in Levine and Leven (eds.), *Motivation, Emotion, and Goal Direction in Neural Networks*. Reprinted with permission of D. Hestenes and Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc., 1992).

Anatomic evidence suggests the NAC is a gate—or switch—through which the limbic system affects behavior. Evidence suggests DA inputs from the ventral tegmentum (VT) open the NAC gate, and 5-HT inputs from the raphe dorsalis (RD) close the NAC gate. The VT and RD are nuclei of neurons in the midbrain and central brainstem.

Thus, the execution pathway starts and actuates goal-directed behavior. Evidence supports the following observations.

Stimulating the NAC with DA agonists (elevators) causes hyperactivity because DA has an excitatory effect facilitating passage of limbic signals. Common DA agonists are amphetamine and cocaine. Stimulating DA antagonists (suppressors) reduce activity.

This evidence leads to the hypothesis that manic-depression (M-D) is caused by malfunctioning VT/DA regulation. That is, patients exhibit manic symptoms—impulsive behavior and pressured speech—because of high DA. They exhibit depressive symptoms— inability to experience pleasure—because of low DA.

In contrast, 5-HT inputs from the RD have an inhibitory effect opposing the facilitatory effect of VT/DA input.

Anatomic evidence also suggests a second parallel pathway. This pathway, called the selection pathway, organizes and selects behavior plans. The selection pathway has direct access to sensory and motor data.

Figure 8.3 shows the selection pathway. The striatum plays the same gating role as the NAC. Moreover, the striatum is controlled like the NAC.

Combining the execution and selection pathways gives the behavioral control system. Figure 8.4 shows the overall functional organization of the system. Although the anatomical components and connections are well known, researchers understand their functions poorly.

Thus, two pathways select and execute behavioral plans. They converge at the pallidum where the final decision is made and broadcast by releasing GO signals (see chapter 6) to the spinal column.

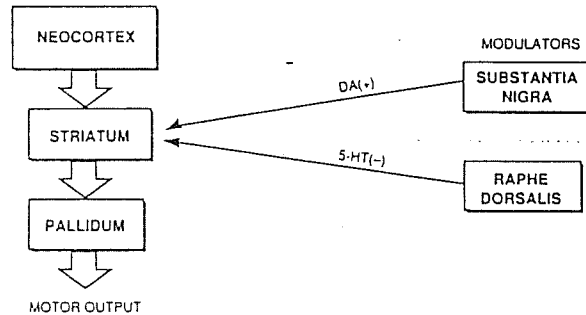


Figure 8.3 Model for the selection pathway organizing and controlling behaviors.

Inhibition control is by 5-HT neurotransmitters of the RM and RD neurons. RM projects to limbic components, while RD projects to motor components in the two pathways.

Excitatory control is by DA neurotransmitters of the VT and SN neurons. VT regulates the execution pathway, and SN regulates the selection pathway. A feedback path, VT → NAC → SN, coordinates the two pathways.

The RD also exerts indirect control by projecting to the VT and SN as well as direct control of the NAC and STR. This control inhibits DA output and is a mechanism for 5-HT simultaneously regulating DA gain in the VT and the SN.

Moreover, the RD responds to stress and to external stimuli. When stress occurs, locus coeruleus (LC) signals inhibit the RD. Thus, stress prepares the NAC, VT, and SN for vigorous behavioral response by increasing DA. Experimentally, RD lesions stop DA responses to stress stimuli.

#### 8.4 CORTICAL CONTROL MODULES

The RD and LC modules play major roles in modulation processing. RD neurons, which innervate the entire neocortex, have a slow regular output. During sleep, RD outputs decrease, going to zero during paradoxical sleep. The effects are slow to start and slow to end. That is, the time constant is long. Moreover, the responses to inputs are nonspecific and stereotyped.

LC neurons also innervate the entire neocortex but at different layers than the RD. NA from the LC ends spontaneous firing of target neurons. The LC fires as a group and influences the entire brain simultaneously, that is, fast and bursty. Moreover, the LC output increases to new, aversive, or rewarding stimuli.

Signal propagation in LC neurons is comparatively slow, requiring 400 ms to reach the entire brain. During sleep, the LC outputs decrease and go to zero in REM sleep.

When the LC activity is high, the output of active nodes increases in all cortical modules and—by lateral interaction—depresses inactive nodes.

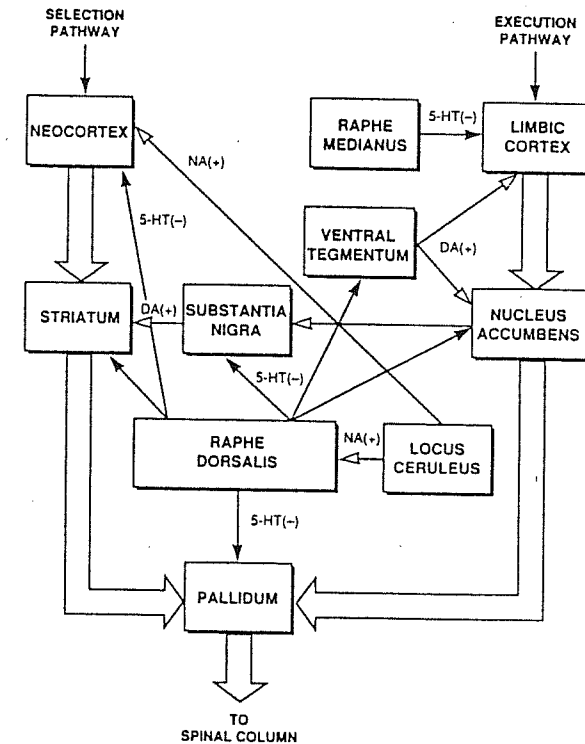


Figure 8.4 Model of human behavior system. (From Hestenes. A Neural Network Theory of Manic-Depressive Illness in Levine and Leven (eds.), *Motivation, Emotion, and Goal Direction in Neural Networks*. Reprinted with permission of D. Hestenes and Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc., 1992).

This LC activity sharpens active patterns, stabilizes existing patterns, produces selected attention, increases signal strength between modules, and strengthens the associations between patterns.

Thus, the NA from the LC tends to increase and stabilize active patterns in all modules while increasing the strength of signals transmitted between them. NA can accelerate associative learning by synaptic plasticity.

LC/NA output acts as a vigilance control variable sensitizing the entire brain to vital stimuli. The slow onset of the LC signal allows time for significant patterns to set up and for enhancing the patterns.

For making complex associations, patterns of activities must set up and be synchronized in more than two modules. The LC does the setup and synchronizing tasks. Ex-

perimentally, lesions of the LC have no effect on learning simple associations but makes learning complex associations impossible. -

### 8.5 DYSFUNCTIONS OF THE CONTROL SYSTEM

A basic hypothesis of neuroscience is that everything the brain-mind does is explainable with nerve cells, their neurotransmitters, and their responsive cells. The preceding model leads to hypotheses about the causes of many mental illnesses.

A disease is defined when enough doctors agree that a cluster of symptoms are reproducible.

In contrast, a disorder is an abnormal, incompletely defined condition. A disorder may become a disease when its signs are recognized as having a consistent form. Diseases and disorders may not be understood nor treatments known for them.

The medical community categorizes psychiatric disorders. The basic reference is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (3rd ed). This reference may be the most significant development in psychiatry in the past 100 years, because it gives a tool for consistent diagnoses in most cases.

Affective psychosis accounts for 70 percent of psychiatric diagnoses. Currently, affective psychosis is a severe mood disturbance in which long periods of inappropriate depression alternate with normal or inappropriate euphoria. M-D is the most common affective psychosis. M-D-caused suicide accounts for about 25,000 deaths a year in the United States, making it a leading cause of death.

For M-D and unipolar anhedonic depression (depression of activity rather than feeling sad), a hypothesis is that malfunctioning gain regulation by the VT of the NAC causes these disorders.

A second hypothesis is that corresponding malfunctions of NAC and STR mechanisms should have corresponding clinical signs.

Schizophrenia is a severe and chronic disturbance of mental function characterized by mixed up thinking, feeling, and behavior. Symptoms include hearing voices, laughing inappropriately, and having loose associations. Schizophrenia accounts for more than 25 percent of all hospital admissions. New cases number about 300,000 a year, making it a major health problem.

Type I schizophrenia is characterized by hallucinations, thought disorders, delusions, and paranoia.

A hypothesis is that high DA causes type I schizophrenia. The high DA produces the behavioral changes exhibited in the disorder.

Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) is characterized by persistent, recurrent and repugnant thoughts (obsession) and senseless and bizarre ritualistic behavior (compulsion).

A hypothesis is that disruption of the competitive pattern selection mechanism causes OCD. This disruption of the selection process causes ill-suited patterns to repeatedly win the competition for expression. 5-HT modulates the competition in the STR.

Clinically, increasing 5-HT or using 5-HT reuptake blockers to keep 5-HT available are effective.

Pattern instabilities for speech output can produce frequent, sudden switches of meaning in midsentences. The instabilities also cause returning to overlearned associations with tendencies for punning and free association.

Delusion and hallucination result from selecting unlikely interpretations of the stimuli. Drug hallucinations inhibit RD/5-HT transmission to the visual cortex.

Instabilities of pattern formation in the visual cortex occur when the cooperative-competitive strength ratio reaches a critical value. Logarithmic mapping of the visual field in the visual cortex causes the cobweb, spiral, and funnel forms typical in early stages of LSD action.

Normal perceptual mechanisms produce dreams. As a rule, perceptual modules get top-down expectation inputs and bottom-up sensory inputs. The top-down expectations are needed to resolve ambiguities in the sensory input.

If the top-down inputs are too strong, they override the sensory inputs altogether so that the percepts—the mental results of perceiving—are simply a readout of internal expectations.

5-HT modulates the relative gains of bottom-up and top-down inputs. Moreover, when REM sleep starts, RD/5-HT is turned off. Thus, reduced 5-HT is a major feature in all models of psychoses including dreaming.

Reality checking is necessary for rational thinking. A simple decrease in gain control of RD/5-HT in the frontal cortex may result in the top-down readout of plans. These plans are self-confirming because of not enough reality checking by bottom-up inputs.

RD/5-HT input modulates pattern matching. Malfunctions in this matching produces hallucinations and delusions. Rapid pattern switching is done by gated dipoles (see chapter 3). Monamines can affect the switching action of a gated dipole.

Unconscious inference combines experience and sensory data to construct a percept. In NNs a percept is a state of resonant activation among different modules. The resonance implies a consistent encoding or interpreting of sensory inputs.

The RD/5-HT function is inhibitory as described. NN theory suggests RD/5-HT input to each target module regulates the relative strengths of excitatory-inhibitory lateral interactions. The lateral gain parameter regulates the stability of pattern formulation and the sharpness of competitive pattern selection.

Thought disorders appearing in mania and schizophrenia may be caused by instabilities in pattern formation. The symptoms depend on the module affected.

For example, alcohol abuse may damage the LC. This damage may lead to Korsakoff's disease. A Korsakoff patient can learn simple associations but cannot learn complex ones.

### 8.6 SUMMARY

This chapter outlines human brain-mind control and modulation from a NN viewpoint. Presently, NN theory is in the first stages of explaining global brain-mind functioning. Nevertheless, a sweeping theory is emerging in the literature.

## SUGGESTED REFERENCES

- D. HESTENES, *A Neural Network Theory of Manic-Depressive Illness*. Though no single reference covers all the material of this chapter, the article by Hestenes comes the closest. The article deals chiefly with manic depression. The first part of the paper describes the control system discussed in the text. The second part describes the results of a drug therapy from this model. The paper illustrates the clinical potential of the theory for interpreting symptoms and suggesting therapies.
- I. BLACK, *Information in the Brain*. The models in this book do not incorporate the most recent cellular and molecular biology results. For this reason, these models are—at best—a crude approximation to brain-mind functioning. Black's book summarizes recent findings that show the CNS reacts to outside stimuli at all levels: behavior, system, cellular, molecular, and genomic. A mathematical formulation incorporating these results is starting.

## EXERCISE

1. As a first step in designing a high-level processor, construct a block diagram of the control and modulation system of the text using conventional control theory.

## 9

## Philosophical Implications

NNs combines many disciplines. Previous chapters showed links among biology, psychology, physiology, control theory, signal processing, and nonlinear mathematics. This chapter considers philosophy.

Although sometimes controversial, philosophical issues are at the heart of many students' and researchers' interest in NNs, especially the nature of consciousness. This line of thought leads directly to some of the central philosophical questions debated since antiquity.

Because the chapter may be provocative, let me say outright that I wish to assert that NNs support a view of Aristotle regarding consciousness. NN theory also corrects a mistake made by philosophers about consciousness since the seventeenth century. The mistake started with Thomas Hobbes in England and René Descartes in France.

## 9.1 CONSCIOUSNESS

The subject of consciousness lies at the very basis of modern questions about the brain-mind of human beings. Indeed, human consciousness may be the last surviving mystery because people do not know how to think about it.

Without much reflection about it, most people suppose they are directly aware of the contents of their own minds, and they are when they feel pains, pleasures, and bodily strains. Such feelings, however, are different from quantities we call perceptions, memories, imaginations, dreams, and thoughts.

The words—pleasures, pains, feelings, perceptions, memories, imaginations, and thoughts—capture nearly all the conscious acts. To focus the discussion, following [2], consider the following question: When conscious, what are we conscious of?

The important word in the question is the preposition “of” that calls for an object. We customarily speak of the stream of consciousness, or flow of thought. Thus, an equivalent question is: What is the content of consciousness?

Historically, philosophers give two different answers to the question, not counting variations. As with technical subjects, some notation must be introduced.

John Locke introduced the term “idea.” Idea in modern philosophy is applied in an omnicomprehensive fashion. Ideas refer to a variety of items including images, percepts, memories, thoughts, concepts, feelings, and sensations.

Returning to the question (When conscious, what are we conscious of?), Locke’s answer is: When we are conscious all ideas are possible objects of our minds.

This answer, though reasonable at first glance, leads to several philosophical dead ends in the opinion of many. Consider the consequences. After long argument and discussion Locke’s answer leads to absurdities, roughly as follows.

1. All ideas are the objects when conscious. (Locke)
2. Consciousness is a private experience.
3. Indeed, all ideas are private.
4. Each person is contained in their own private world.
5. So proving an external reality that agrees with other people’s reality is impossible.
6. Thus, skepticism is complete regarding outside reality.
7. Alternatively, everything I am aware of is a figment of my own mind. (solipsism)

To avoid the absurd consequences of skepticism or solipsism, the argument is tried that ideas are representations, an argument, however, that leads to a contradiction. If people are aware of only ideas, reality can never be directly experienced. Indeed, their ideas cannot imitate reality because, say, a portrait can represent a person if and only if the portrait and the person can be compared. If the person is never seen, no claim of representation can be made.

Thus, Locke’s answer about consciousness—and of many modern philosophers—leads to absurdity or contradiction.

Aristotle, and later Thomas Aquinas, gave another answer. To state this answer, define another term as follows.

Cognitive ideas are those ideas excluding feelings, emotions, and bodily sensations. That is, cognitive ideas are memories, concepts, and precepts. Cognitive ideas are the agent for apprehending the objects of consciousness. Thus, noncognitive ideas are feelings, emotions, and bodily sensations.

Returning to the question (When conscious, what are we conscious of?), Aristotle’s answer is: When we are conscious, the objects of our minds are noncognitive ideas.

Interpreting this answer, while we can remember the feelings and sensations of past events, we are never aware of the memories or concepts by which we recall them.

A simple analogy is if memories are likened to a radio (cognitive ideas), we can hear messages (noncognitive ideas) produced by the radio, but we cannot know anything about the radio itself.

Again consider the consequences of this answer. After much argument and discussion, the answer leads to consequences that agree with experience and common sense.

1. When we are conscious, noncognitive ideas are the objects of our minds. (Aristotle)
2. Indeed, thoughts, experiences, and past events are the objects when conscious.
3. We are directly acquainted with the public existence of other people and objects.
4. Moreover, we can share noncognitive ideas, though we cannot share our cognitive ideas, because we are never conscious of them.

## 9.2 A NEURAL NETWORK INTERPRETATION

Readers of the previous chapters will immediately see a NN interpretation of the preceding notions.

Cognitive ideas are equivalent to—or are modeled by—the LTM traces in, say, ART-2. In NN terminology, Aristotle asserts people cannot be consciously aware of their own—or others’—LTM traces.

Once sensory experience—and other mechanisms—produce LTM traces, these patterns cannot be directly accessed.

The objects of consciousness—the flow of thoughts in our minds—are the STM patterns in NNs. Moreover, we are aware of only some of the STM patterns. Those STM patterns associated with, say, motor activity are usually unconscious.

## 9.3 FINAL REMARKS

Dennett [26] observed most brain researchers pretend that, for them, the brain is just another organ. Indeed, there is a reluctance to confront the “big issues,” like consciousness.

Some researchers, feigning amnesia, pretend we do not have experiences we know full well we have. Others nitpick empirical details, such as some of Hubel and Wiesel’s discoveries about vision.

Nonetheless, how the brain-mind works needs new ways of thinking. Neuroscience by itself is not enough, anymore than electronics is sufficient for understanding, say, virtual memory structures in modern computers.

NNs gives a viewpoint for developing and testing on machines new theories about phenomena in complex networks. Moreover, NNs helps organize coherent testable hypotheses.

The claim that a NN viewpoint is no possible explanation of the human brain-mind calls for showing what it has to leave out or cannot do. The claim that a NN model is incorrect in many details is conceded.

While NN modeling of higher processing is barely starting, nevertheless, its direction is clear: Philosophically speaking, NNs is a version of functionalism—that is, if you build

the entire functional structure of the human brain, you would reproduce all the mental properties as well.

This introductory volume presents some of the necessary NN basics. Application of NNs for mimicking consciousness and higher-level mental processing may be the next major milestone.

### SUGGESTED REFERENCES

- M. ADLER, *Ten Philosophical Mistakes*. This book is a look at common errors in modern philosophical thought. The text summarizes the first chapter about consciousness. Later chapters discuss perceptual and conceptual thought, the source of word meanings, and the difference between opinion and knowledge.
- G. EDELMAN, *Group Selection and Phasic Reentrant Signaling: A Theory of Higher Brain Function*. Most researchers believe all nervous systems obey similar principles in their mechanisms of signaling. At a functional level, however, confusion reigns. Indeed, until recently the neural structure for higher brain functions has been left to philosophical speculation and psychological testing. These efforts do not address the most challenging problem of neurobiology, namely the cellular mechanisms of higher brain functions, particularly consciousness. Edelman hypothesizes that consciousness results from stored patterns and current sensory input. Sensory and motor signals continually update consciousness. Sufficient conditions for conscious awareness include the quality of sensory inputs, something present theories of consciousness have not given. If a machine with these properties were built, it would report conscious states.
- J. HAGELIN, *Is Consciousness the Unified Field? A Field Theorist's Perspective*. This paper, written by a theoretical physicist, proposes a unified field theory. The theory combines standard quantum mechanics with a field of "pure consciousness." Such a theory is consistent with all physical principles. It may account for experimentally observed field effects of consciousness. The paper is recommended as background.
- D. DENNETT, *Consciousness Explained*. This recent work on consciousness has all the appearances of a typical nonscientific psychology work. Appearances are deceiving, however. The book is remarkably readable with a graceful, informal style that has fluency and notice of technical details. The central idea is that highly parallel processing, well known to the NN community, produces the phenomenon of consciousness. The book is highly recommended as background for this chapter, especially in comparison with Penrose's *The Emperor's New Mind*. Penrose suggests a revolution in physics is needed before consciousness is accessible to scientific investigation.

## Glossary

### Neuroanatomy Terms

- Amygdala** A neural group in the dorsomedial temporal lobe bilaterally that enables learning in conjunction with the hippocampus.
- Cerebellum** Part of the brain lying above brainstem that governs coordination of motor function and body orientation.
- Cerebral cortex** The layer neurons covering the hemispheres on their external surfaces. The cortex supports many functions, including cognition. Called also the neocortex.
- Corpus callosum** A large group of nerve fibers connecting the two cerebral hemispheres.
- Dendrites** The branch-like structure of neurons that serves to sum impulses from other neurons.
- Frontal lobe** The most forward part of the cerebral cortex enabling motor function and reasoning.
- Interpreter** An area in the dominant hemisphere that seems to produce hypotheses and explanations about internal and external inputs.
- Locus coeruleus** A group of about 1400 noradrenergic neurons in the brain stem that regulate attention and anxiety level.
- Striatum** A group of neurons in the cerebral white matter, regulating motor programs and coordination. Inputs are from the substantia nigra, thalamus, and motor cortex. Outputs are to the hypothalamus, thalamus, and motor neural groups.
- Synapse** The connection area between neurons through which signaling occurs.

### Neuroscience Terms

- Acetylcholine** An excitatory amine transmitter used throughout the nervous system. The transmitter is synthesized by the enzyme choline acetyltransferase from acetyl coenzyme A and choline and is metabolized by the enzyme acetylcholinesterase.

- Amphetamines** A class of pharmacologic agents that release catecholamines from nerve terminals and inhibit the uptake and inactivation of amines. Amphetamine overdose may cause a paranoid psychosis.
- Catalysis** Conversion of substances to products by an enzyme.
- Catecholamine** A family of neurotransmitters defined chemically as 3,4-dihydroxy derivatives of phenylethylamines. Well-known members are dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.
- Dopamine** A catecholamine neurotransmitter used by the substantia nigra neurons regulating motor function.
- Enzyme** A molecule greatly increasing the rate of chemical reactions, without being permanently altered itself.
- Epinephrine** A catecholamine neurotransmitter used by the adrenal medulla to regulate cardiovascular function in response to stress.
- Gene** A unit of hereditary DNA molecule encoding a biological function.
- Glia** Nonneural brain cells providing support and other functions.
- Habituation** The decrease in synaptic efficiency from repeated exposure to a stimulus.
- Ion channel** A large molecule or group of molecules inserted in the cell membrane forming a route for passage of particular charged molecules.
- Long-term potentiation** Strengthening of synaptic efficiency by the simultaneous input signals to a neuron.
- Serotonin** A neurotransmitter derived from dietary tryptophan that is localized in the raphe neurons of the brain stem and regulates sleep.

### Philosophy Terms

- Connectionism** A computational model of cognition where knowledge exists in the pattern and strengths of connections among elements, perhaps neural. Learning is the altering of the connections. Also termed *parallel distributed processing*.
- Functionalism** The view that intelligence can be implemented by a variety of means, including computers.
- Reductionism** The view that brain-mind functioning is explainable in terms of physical structure.

### Psychology Terms

- Conditioning, classical** The process of relating two stimuli, a conditioned and an unconditioned stimulus, resulting in a conditioned response.
- Conditioning, instrumental** The process of relating the response and a reinforcing stimulus.

## Bibliography

1. ACKLEY, D., HINTON, G., AND SEJOWSKI, T. 1985. A learning algorithm for Boltzmann Machines. *Cognitive Science* 9, 147-69.
2. ADLER, J. 1985. *Ten Philosophical Mistakes*. New York: Macmillan.
3. ADOMLAN, G., AND ADOMLAN, G. E. 1984. A global method for solution of complex systems. *Mathematical Modeling* 5, 251-63.
4. ANDREWS, R., AND STRINGER, C. 1989. *Human Evolution* (pp. 9-46). New York: Cambridge University Press.
5. BAILEY, C. H., AND GOURAS, P. 1981. The retina and phototransduction. In E. R. Kandel and J. H. Schwartz, eds. *Principles of Neural Science*, 2nd ed. (pp. 344-56). New York: Elsevier North-Holland.
6. BERLINSKI, D. 1976. *On Systems Analysis: An Essay Concerning the Limitations of Some Mathematical Methods in the Social, Political, and Biological Sciences*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
7. BICKEL, A., AND BICKEL, R. 1987. Tree structure rules in genetic algorithms. *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Genetic Algorithms and Their Applications* (pp. 77-81). Palo Alto, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.
8. BLACK, I. 1991. *Information in the Brain*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
9. BLOOM, F. E., LAZERSON, A., AND HOFSTADTER, L. 1985. *Brain, Mind, and Behavior*. New York: W.H. Freeman.
10. BOSE, N. K., AND GARGA, A. K. 1992. Neural network design using Voronoi diagrams: Preliminaries. *Proceedings of the International Joint Conference on Neural Networks: Vol. 3* (pp. 127-38). Piscataway, NJ: IEEE Service Center.
11. BROGAN, W. L. 1974. *Modern Control Theory*. New York: Quantum Publishers, Inc.



12. BULLOCK, D., AND GROSSBERG, S. 1988. Neural dynamics of planned arm movements: Emergent invariants and speed-accuracy properties during trajectory formation. In S. Grossberg, ed. *Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence* (pp. 553-622). Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
13. CARPENTER, G. A. 1985. A neural theory of circadian rhythms: Split rhythms, after-effects and motivational interactions. *Journal of Theoretical Biology* 113, 163-223.
14. CARPENTER, G. A., AND GROSSBERG, S. 1987. A massively parallel architecture for a self-organizing neural pattern recognition machine. *Computer Vision, Graphics, and Image Processing* 37, 54-115.
15. CARPENTER, G. A., AND GROSSBERG, S. 1987. ART 2: Self-organization of stable category recognition codes for analog input patterns. *Applied Optics* 26, 4919-30.
16. CARPENTER, G. A., AND GROSSBERG, S. 1990. ART 3: Hierarchical search using chemical transmitters in self-organizing pattern recognition architectures. *Neural Networks* 3, 129-52.
17. CARPENTER, G. A., GROSSBERG, S., AND ROSEN, D. B. 1991. ART 2-A: An adaptive resonance algorithm for rapid category learning and recognition. *Neural Networks* 4, 493-503.
18. CASTI, J. L. 1977. *Dynamical Systems and Their Applications* (pp. 1-34). New York: Academic Press.
19. CELLIER, F. 1991. *Continuous System Modeling* (pp. 679-90). New York: Springer-Verlag.
20. SELBY, S. M. (Ed.) 1972. *CRC Standard Mathematical Tables*. 20th ed. Cleveland, OH: The Chemical Rubber Co.
21. CRICK, F. H. C., AND ASANUMA, C. 1988. Certain aspects of the anatomy and physiology of the cerebral cortex. In J. L. McClelland and D. E. Rumelhart, eds. *Parallel Distributed Processing: Vol. 2* (pp. 333-71). Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
22. DARNELL, J., LODISH, H., AND BALTIMORE, D. 1986. *Molecular Cell Biology* (pp. 625-28). New York: W.H. Freeman.
23. DARPA. 1988. *DARPA Neural Network Study—Final Report* (Technical Report 840). Lincoln, MA: MIT Lincoln Laboratory.
24. DEIMLING, K. 1985. *Nonlinear Functional Analysis* (pp. 186-216). New York: Springer-Verlag.
25. DE JONG, K. 1987. On using genetic algorithms to search program spaces. *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Genetic Algorithms and Their Applications* (pp. 210-16). Palo Alto, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.
26. DENNETT, D. C. 1991. *Consciousness Explained*. Boston: Little, Brown.
27. The Diagram Group. 1987. *The Brain—A User's Manual*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons.
28. DUPRAW, E. J. 1968. *Cell and Molecular Biology* (pp. 266-70). New York: Academic Press.
29. EDELMAN, G. M., AND MOUNTCASTLE, V.B. 1982. *The Mindful Brain*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
30. FRISBY, J. P. 1980. *Seeing-Illusion, Brain and Mind*. New York: Oxford University Press.
31. GALDIANO, P., AND GROSSBERG, S. 1991. Vector associative maps: Unsupervised real-time error-based learning and control of movement trajectories. *Neural Networks* 4, 147-83.
32. GOLDBERG, S. 1988. *Clinical Neuroanatomy Made Ridiculously Simple*. Miami, FL: MedMaster, Inc.
33. GROSSBERG, S., AND KUPERSTEIN, M. 1986. *Neural Dynamics of Adaptive Sensory-Motor Control: Ballistic Eye Movements*. New York: Elsevier Science Publishing Company, Inc.
34. GROSSBERG, S. 1982. *Studies of Mind and Brain*. Boston: D. Reidel Publishing Co.

35. GROSSBERG, S. 1988. Nonlinear neural networks: Principles, mechanisms, and architectures. *Neural Networks* 1, 17-61.
36. HAGELIN, J. S. 1987. Is consciousness the unified field: An introduction. *Modern Science and Vedic Science* 1(1), 29-87.
37. HARP, S. A., SAMARD, T., AND GUHA, A. 1989. Toward the genetic synthesis of neural networks. *Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Genetic Algorithms and Their Applications* (pp. 360-69). Palo Alto, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.
38. HARVEY, R. L., DICAPRIO, P. N., HEINEMANN, K. G., SILVERMAN, M. L., AND DUGAN, J. M. 1990. A neural architecture for potentially classifying cytology specimens by machines. *Proceedings of the Fourteenth Annual Symposium on Computer Applications in Medical Care* (pp. 539-43). Los Alamitos, CA: IEEE Computer Society Press.
39. HARVEY, R. L., AND HEINEMANN, K.G. 1991. A biological vision model for sensor fusion. *Proceedings of the 4th National Symposium on Sensor Fusion—Vol. 1* (pp. 119-29). Ann Arbor, MI: IRIA Center, ERIM.
40. HARVEY, R. L. 1991. Recent advances in neural networks for machine vision (Plenary paper). *Proceedings of the Third Biennial Acoustics, Speech, & Signal Processing Mini Conference* (pp. IV.1-IV.6). Weston, MA: IEEE Central New England Council.
41. HARVEY, R. L., DICAPRIO, P. N., AND HEINEMANN, K. G. 1991. A neural network architecture for general image recognition. *The Lincoln Laboratory Journal* 4, 189-207.
42. HARVEY, R. L., DICAPRIO, P. N., AND HEINEMANN, K. G. 1992. *A Neural Network Architecture for General Image Recognition* (Technical Report 955). Lincoln, MA: MIT Lincoln Laboratory.
43. HARVEY, R. M. 1993. Nursing diagnosis by computers: An application of neural networks. *Nursing Diagnosis* 4, 28-36.
44. HECHT-NIELSEN, R. 1990. *Neurocomputing* (p. 137). Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
45. HESTENES, D. 1987. How the brain works: The next great scientific revolution. In G. R. Smith and G. J. Erickson, eds. *Maximum Entropy and Bayesian Spectral Analysis and Estimation Problems* (pp. 173-205). Boston: D. Reidel Publishing Co.
46. HESTENES, D. 1992. A neural network theory of manic-depressive illness. In D. S. Levine and S. J. Leven, eds. *Motivation, Emotion, and Goal Direction in Neural Networks* (pp. 208-53). Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
47. HODGKIN, A. L., AND HUXLEY, A. F. 1952. A quantitative description of membrane current and its application to conduction and excitation in nerve. *J. Physiol.* 117, 500-544.
48. HOLLAND, J. 1975. *Adaptation in Natural and Artificial Systems*. Ann Arbor, MI: The University of Michigan Press.
49. HOPFIELD, J. J. 1982. Neural networks and physical systems with emergent collective computational abilities. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 79, 2554-58.
50. HUANG, W.-Y., AND LIPPMANN, R. P. 1987, June. *Comparisons between neural network and conventional classifiers*. Paper presented at the First International Neural Network Conference, San Diego, CA.
51. HUBEL, D. H. 1988. *Eye, Brain, and Vision*. New York: W.H. Freeman.
52. KANDEL, E. R., AND SCHWARTZ, J. H., eds. 1985. *Principles of Neural Science*, 2nd ed. New York: Elsevier North-Holland.
53. KENT, E. W. 1981. *The Brains of Men and Machines*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
54. KEYNES, R. D. 1979. Ion channels in the nerve-cell membrane. *Scientific American* 240(3), 126-35.

55. KOSKO, B. 1989. Unsupervised learning in noise. *Proceedings of the International Joint Conference on Neural Networks: Vol. 1* (pp. 7-17). Piscataway, NJ: IEEE Service Center.
56. KUFFLER, S. W., NICHOLLS, J. G., AND MARTIN A. R. 1984. *From Neuron to Brain*, 2nd ed. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates Inc. Publishers.
57. KUPERSTEIN, M. 1988. Neural model of adaptive hand-eye coordination for single postures. *Science* 239, 1308-11.
58. LI, H., AND KENDER, J. R., eds. 1988. Computer vision [Special Issue]. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 76(8).
59. LLOYD, J. M. 1975. *Thermal Imaging Systems*. New York: Plenum.
60. LIU, Z., GASKA, J. P., JACOBSON, L. D., AND POLLEN, D. A. 1992. Interneuronal interaction between members of quadrature phase and anti-phase pairs in the cat's visual cortex. *Vision Res.* 32, 1193-98.
61. LIPPMANN, R. P. 1987. An introduction to computing with neural nets. *IEEE ASSP Magazine* 4, 4-22.
62. LYNCH, G. 1986. *Synapses, Circuits, and the Beginning of Memory*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
63. MARR, D. 1982. *Vision*. San Francisco: W.H. Freeman.
64. MARTIN, K. A., AND PERRY, V. H. 1988. On seeing a butterfly: The physiology of vision. *Sci. Prog. Oxf.* 72, 259-80.
65. MAUNSELL, J. H. 1987. Physiological evidence for two visual subsystems. In L. Vaina, ed. *Matters of Intelligence* (pp. 59-88). Boston: D. Reidel Publishing Co.
66. MCCULLOCH, W., AND PITTS, W. 1943. A logical calculus of the ideas immanent in nervous activity. *Bulletin of Mathematical Biophysics* 5, 115-33.
67. MELZAK, A. A. 1976. *Mathematical Ideas, Modeling and Applications—Vol. II of Companion to Concrete Mathematics* (pp. 355-64). New York: John Wiley.
68. MILLER, G. F., TODD, P. M., AND HEGDE, S. U. 1989. Designing neural networks using genetic algorithms. *Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Genetic Algorithms* (pp. 379-84). San Mateo, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.
69. MILLER, R. F. 1988. Are single retinal neurons both excitatory and inhibitory? *Nature* 336, 517-8.
70. MILLER III, W. T., SUTTON, R. S., AND WERBOS, P. J., eds. 1990. *Neural Networks for Control*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
71. MINSKY, M., AND PAPERT, S. 1969. *Perceptrons*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
72. PASSINO, K. M., SARTORI, M. A., AND ANTSAKLIS, P. J. 1989. Neural computing for numeric-to-symbolic conversion in control systems. *IEEE Control Systems Magazine* 9(2), 44-52.
73. PENROSE, R. 1989. *The Emperor's New Mind*. New York: Oxford University Press.
74. POLLEN, D. A., GASKA, J. P., AND JACOBSON, L. D. 1989. Physiological constraints on models of visual cortical function. In R. M. J. Cotterill, ed. *Models of Brain Function* (pp. 115-35). New York: Cambridge University Press.
75. REES, A. R., AND STERNBERG, M. J. 1984. *From Cells to Atoms*. Boston: Blackwell Scientific Publications.
76. ROSE, D., AND DOBSON, V. G. 1985. *Models of the Visual Cortex*. New York: John Wiley.
77. ROSENFELD, A. 1987. Image analysis: problems, progress and prospects. In M.A. Fischler and O. Firschein, eds. *Readings in Computer Vision* (pp. 3-12). Los Altos, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.

78. ROSENFELD, A. 1988. Computer vision: Basic principles. *IEEE Proceedings* 76, 863-69.
79. RUMELHART, D., AND MCCLELLAND, J. 1986. *Parallel Distributed Processing: Vols. 1 and 2*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
80. SILVERMAN, M. L., DUGAN, J. M., HARVEY, R. L., DICAPRIO, P. N., AND HEINEMANN, K. G. 1990, March. *A neural network as a potential means of reading cytology specimens*. Paper presented at the 79th annual meeting of The United States-Canadian Division of The International Academy of Pathology, Boston, MA.
81. SILVERMAN, M. L., DUGAN, J. M., HARVEY, R. L., DICAPRIO, P. N., AND HEINEMANN, K. G. 1990, March. *Classification of individual cells by a neural network: A potential means of screening cytology specimens*. Poster presented at the 1990 Spring Meeting of the American Society of Clinical Pathologists, San Francisco, CA.
82. SHERIDAN, T. B., AND FERRELL, W. R. 1974. *Man-Machine Systems*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
83. VAN ESSEN, D. C., AND MAUNSELL, J. H. R. 1983. Hierarchical organization and functional streams in the visual cortex. *Trends Neurosci.* 6(9), 370-75.
84. WERBOS, P. J. 1974. *Beyond regression: New tools for prediction and analysis in the behavioral sciences*. Doctoral Dissertation, Applied Math, Harvard University.
85. WHITLEY, D., AND HANSON, T. 1989. Optimizing neural networks using faster, more accurate genetic search. *Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Genetic Algorithms* (pp. 391-96). San Mateo, CA: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.

## Figure Credits

The author gratefully acknowledges permission to reprint the following:

Figures 1.4, 2.1, and 2.7: From *Brain, Mind and Behavior* by Bloom, Lazerson, and Hofstadter. Copyright ©1985 by W.H. Freeman and Co. Reprinted by permission of W.H. Freeman and Co.

Figures 1.5, 1.6, and 2.2: From *The Brain—A User's Manual* by The Diagram Group. Copyright ©1982 and 1987 by Diagram Visual Information Limited. Reprinted by permission of Diagram Visual Information Limited.

Figures 2.4, 2.6, 2.9, 2.10, 5.1, and 8.1: From *From Neuron to Brain* (2nd ed.) by Kuffler, Nicholls, and Martin. Copyright ©1984 by Sinauer Associates, Inc.. Adapted (Figs. 2.4, 2.9) and reprinted (Figs. 2.6, 2.10, 5.1, 8.1) by permission of Sinauer Associates, Inc.

Figure 4.4: From "Nonlinear Neural Networks: Principles, Mechanisms, and Architectures" by Grossberg in *Neural Networks 1*. Copyright ©1988 by S. Grossberg. Reprinted by permission of S. Grossberg.

Figures 4.12 and 4.13: From "ART 2: Self-Organization of Stable Category Recognition Codes for Analog Input Patterns" by Carpenter and Grossberg in *Applied Optics 26*. Copyright ©1987 by G. A. Carpenter and S. Grossberg. Reprinted by permission of G. A. Carpenter.

Figure 5.2: From *Principles of Neural Science*, 2nd ed., by Kandel and Schwartz (eds.). Copyright ©1985 by Elsevier Science Publishing Co., Inc. Adapted, with permission, from the *Annual Review of Neuroscience* Vol. 2, ©1979 by Annual Reviews Inc., and by permission of Appleton & Lange and E.R. Kandel.

Figure 5.5: From *The Brains of Men and Machines* by Kent. Copyright ©1981 by E. Kent. Reprinted by permission of E. Kent.

Figures 6.7, 6.8, 6.9, 6.10, 6.11, and 6.12: From "Neural Dynamics of Planned Arm Movements: Emergent Invariants and Speed-Accuracy Properties during Trajectory Formation" by Bullock and Grossberg in S. Grossberg (ed.), *Neural Networks and Natural Intelligence*. Copyright ©1988 by The Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Reprinted by permission of The MIT Press.

Figures 8.2 and 8.4: From "A Neural Network Theory of Manic-Depressive Illness" by Hestenes in Levine and Leven (eds.), *Motivation, Emotion, and Goal Direction in Neural Networks*. Copyright ©1992 by Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc. Adapted with permission of Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc. and D. Hestenes.

Table 1.5: From *Man-Machine Systems* by Sheridan and Ferrell. Copyright ©1974 by The Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Reprinted by permission of The MIT Press.

## Index of Symbols

<p> <math>A</math>, 44  <math>A_i(x_i)</math>, 26  <math>A</math>, 151  <math>b_{ki}</math>, 26  <math>b'_{ki}</math>, 28  <math>B_i</math>, 29  <math>B_{ij}</math>, 28  <math>B</math>, 31  <math>B</math>, 151  <math>c_{ki}</math>, 28  <math>C</math>, 28, 30  <math>C</math>, 152  <math>C_{ii}</math>, 27  <math>d</math>, 78, 154  <math>d'_j</math>, 64  <math>D</math>, 207  <math>D_i</math>, 29  <math>e</math>, 78  <math>e_i</math>, 48  <math>E_{ij}</math>, 68  <math>f()</math>, 26  <math>f()</math>, 151  <math>f_1, \dots, f_M</math>, 46  <math>F_1, F_2</math>, 65  <math>g()</math>, 28  <math>g^+, g^-, g^p</math>, 28  <math>h()</math>, 68  <math>I</math>, 38  <math>I_i</math>, 29  <math>I'</math>, 58  <math>I^{(1)}, I^{(2)}</math>, 39                 </p>	<p> <math>I</math>, 72  <math> Z </math>, 71  <math>\mathcal{J}</math>, 71  <math>J_i</math>, 29  <math>J^+, J^-</math>, 67  <math>\bar{K}</math>, 30  <math>\bar{K}</math>, 60  <math>L</math>, 69  <math>M_{ki}</math>, 30  <math>M</math>, 52, 85  <math>N</math>, 48, 85  <math>N(t)</math>, 38  <math>N_1, N_2</math>, 39  <math>N_c</math>, 161  <math>N_c'</math>, 43  <math>N_g</math>, 161  <math>N_s</math>, 43  <math>p_i</math>, 78  <math>P</math>, 82  <math>QT</math>, 62  <math>q_i</math>, 78  <math>R</math>, 87  <math>S</math>, 52  <math>S_{ki}</math>, 26  <math>S'_{ij}</math>, 28  <math>S'_i</math>, 30  <math>t_i</math>, 24  <math>t_i</math>, 41  <math>T_i</math>, 71, 155  <math>TLO</math>, 155  <math>THO</math>, 155                 </p>
---	--

$u_i$ , 78  
 $U[\ ]$ , 27  
 $v_i$ , 78  
 $V, V^+, V^-, V^p$ , 28  
 $V(t)$ , 64  
 $\tilde{V}_i$ , 78  
 $w_j$ , 78  
 $W$ , 85  
 $x_i, x_u$ , 63  
 $x_i$ , 24  
 $\tilde{x}_i$ , 58  
 $X$ , 151  
 $\tilde{X}$ , 60  
 $X$ , 69  
 $[X]$ , 69  
 $Z$ , 52, 152  
 $Z_i^{(-)}, Z_i^{(+)}$ , 29  
 $Z_i$ , 46  
 $Z_j$ , 79  
 $Z_j'$ , 80  
 $ZCS$ , 40

$Z_{ij}$ , 25  
 $[Z_{ij}(0)]$ , 73  
 $Z_{ij}'$ , 69  
 $\alpha$ , 37, 161  
 $\beta$ , 37, 161  
 $\Gamma_i$ , 26  
 $\Gamma_{ii}$ , 26  
 $\Delta I$ , 60  
 $\Delta x_i$ , 68  
 $\epsilon$ , 67  
 $\theta$ , 87  
 $\theta_i$ , 38  
 $\tilde{\theta}_i$ , 40  
 $\mu$ , 45  
 $\pi(\ )$ , 88  
 $\tau_{ii}$ , 26  
 $\omega$ , 55  
 $[ ]^+$ , 26  
 $\| \|$ , 78  
 $\text{sgn}(\ )$ , 82

## Index of Symbols

## Index

- A**
- Acetylcholine (ACh), 21, 23, 130, 166
  - ACh, *see* Acetylcholine
  - Activation level, defined in standard model, 24
  - Action potential
    - approximation, 29
    - defined, 15
    - mechanism, 15-20
    - see also* Depolarization, Hyperpolarization
  - Adaptation level, 59
  - Adaptive eye-hand coordination, 131-44
  - Adaptive Resonance Theory (ART), 64-81, 147
    - ART-1, 64-75
    - ART-2, 75-81
    - ART-2A, 81
    - ART-3, 81
    - defined, 64
  - Additive STM equation, derivation, 26-8
  - ADP, 17
  - Aegyptopitheous, 4
  - Affective disorders, 172
  - Afferent signal flow, 9, *see also* Input-output channels
  - Agonists, 169
  - AI, *see* Artificial intelligence
  - Alcoholism, 173
  - Amacrine cells, retina, 14, 152
  - $\gamma$ -Aminobutyric acid (GABA), 22, 166
  - Amphetamines, 169
  - Amygdala, 5
  - Anatomy, 5-9, *see also* particular structures
  - Antagonists, 169
  - Appetite, 5, 8
  - Aquinas, T., 176
  - Area 17, visual cortex, 6, 106-11
  - Aristotle, 175, 176
  - ART, *see* Adaptive resonance theory
  - Artificial intelligence (AI), 1, 2
  - Associative memory, 3, 12, 86
  - Asynchronous, 3, 110
  - ATP, 17
  - Attention, 64
  - Auditory, threshold, 10
  - Australopithecine, 4
  - Automatic gain control, 58
  - Avalanches, 41-44
  - Axoaxonic, 22
  - Axons, 5, 14
    - current-voltage characteristics, 15
    - defined, 14
    - membrane parameters, 15
- B**
- Backpropagation (BP), 101, 147, 200
  - Basal ganglia, 5, 130
  - Behavior, 7, 10
    - causes of, 168-70
    - disorders, 166, 172-73
    - see also* Emotion

Betz cells, 130  
 Biases, perceptrons in, 88, 93  
 Binary inputs, 65  
 Biological clocks, 53  
 Biological model, 2, 3  
 Black, I., 11, 34, 174  
 Boltzmann machine, 147  
 Bottom-up trace, 68  
 BP, *see* Backpropagation  
 Brain, organization of, 5-11  
 Brain function, *see* Cognition, Thinking and Consciousness  
 Brain-mind, 1, 7, 11  
 Brainstem, 5, 7  
 Brightness, 60  
 Brodmann areas, 7  
 Bullock, D., 145

**C**

Calcium, 23  
 CC, *see* Cooperative-competitive  
 Carpenter, G., 4, 54, 103  
 Catecholamines (CA), 32  
 Catechols, 167  
 Cells, nervous system, 14, *see also* Neurons  
 Central nervous system (CNS), 14, *see also* Brain, Spinal cord  
 Cerebellum, 6, 130  
 Cerebral cortex, 6-11  
   columnar organization and, 12  
   development of, 4-5  
   layers of, 6  
   reticular formation and, 10  
   visual information processing, 104-11  
 Cerebral hemispheres, 10  
   left and language, 10  
   right and pattern processing, 10  
 Cervical smears (GYN pap), 125  
 Channels in machine vision systems, classification, 112-22  
   location, 122-25  
 Chemical transmitters, *see* Neurotransmitters  
 Chimpanzee, 4  
 Chlorine, 14, 22  
 Circadian circuit, 53  
 Classifier, unsupervised, 120  
 Classical conditioning, 40-41  
 CNS, *see* Central nervous system  
 Cocaine, 169  
 Cognition, 5, 110, *see also* Thinking and consciousness  
 Cohen, Michael, 63  
 Cohen-Grossberg theorem, 62  
 Color discrimination in human beings, 10  
 Columnar organization, cortex in, 12  
 Complex cells, 109

Conjunction normal form, 89  
 Consciousness, 1, 5, 10, 175  
 Content-addressable memory (CAM), 86  
 Contrast enhancement, 61, 75  
 Control theory, 137  
 Cooperative-competitive (CC) neural networks, 57, 64, 146, 161  
 Corpus callosum, 5  
 Cortex, brain, 5-7  
 Cranial  
   function, 7, 8  
   nerves, 7, 9  
 Cro-Magnon, 5  
 Cytology screening, 126

**D**

DA, *see* Dopamine  
 DARPA, 13  
 Decision regions, convex and nonconvex, 86  
 Delta rule, 101  
 Dennett, D., 11, 177-78  
 Dendrites, 14-16  
 Depolarization  
   axon along, 16-19  
   defined, 16  
 Depression, 172  
 Descartes, 175  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 172  
 Diagnosis  
   mental disorders in, 172  
   nursing in, 103  
 Difference vectors, 137  
 Dipole *see* Gated dipole  
 Directed links, 2  
 Diseases of brain,  
   of brain, *see* Behavior disorders  
 DNA, 33  
 Dopamine (DA), 166  
 Dreams, 173  
 Drugs, brain effects on, 173

**E**

Edelman, G., 11, 12, 178  
 Efferent, 9, *see also* Input-output channels  
 Einstein's brain, 24  
 Electrical circuits analogy, 28  
 Electrical potentials, neuron in, 16  
 Emotion,  
   brain structures mediating, 5, 8  
   limbic systems and, 8  
   *see also* Behavior  
 Enhancement and selection, 51  
 Enzymes, 19  
 EP, *see* Epinephrine

Epinephrine (EP), 167  
 Epsp, 22  
 Evolution, 4-5  
 Excitatory signals, 14  
 Execution pathway in brain, 168  
 Exemplars, 77  
 Extended LTM equation,  
   derivation, 30  
   gated dipoles and, 51-54, 68  
 Exteroceptors, 9  
 Eye(s)  
   characteristics, 140-41  
   visual cortex, 7  
   *see also* Vision

**F**

Facilitation, 23-24  
 Fan-out, fan-in, 14  
 Feature detectors, 108-9, 147  
 Fields  
   ART systems in, 65, 75-76  
   vision in, 106-8  
 Fixed-point theorems, 156  
 Forebrain, 5-7, *see also* particular structures  
 Forward error correction (FEC), 86  
 Fourier transform, visual cortex in, 109  
 Fovea, 105  
 Foveation, 132  
 Frequency shift keying (FSK), 20  
 Frontal cortex, 6, 24  
 Functionalism, 177

**G**

GA, *see* Genetic algorithm  
 GABA, *see*  $\gamma$ -Aminobutyric acid  
 Gated dipole, 51-54, 68  
 Gaze map, 132-33  
 Gender, intelligence and, 5  
 Generalization, learning visual images and, 126  
 Generation, *see* Genetic algorithm,  
 Genetic algorithm (GA), 114  
   defined, 147-48  
   designing neural networks by, 149-64  
   generation, 148  
   operators, 148  
   parents, 148  
   payoff criteria, 154-55  
 Geniculate nucleus, *see* Lateral geniculate nucleus  
 Genome, 33  
 Glial, 6, 24  
 GO signals, VITE systems in, 137, 141  
 Gorilla, 4

Gradients, concentration, 16  
 Gray inputs, 112-13  
 Grossberg, S., 4, 54, 103, 145

**H**

Hallucinations, 235  
 Hamming metric, 75  
 Hartline-Ratcliff equation, 48  
 Harvey's method, 103  
 Hearing,  
   brain structures, 5, 9  
   threshold in human beings, 10  
 Hebb, D., 32  
 Hebb's law, 40  
 Hemispheres, 10-11  
 Hestenes, D., 34, 54, 174  
 Hidden layers, perceptrons in, 87, 89  
 Hindbrain, 5, 6  
 Hippocampus, 5, 33  
 Hobbs, T., 175  
 Hodgkin-Huxley systems, 24  
 Holland, J., 147  
 Hominids, 4  
 Homo sapiens, 4  
 Hopfield network, 81-86  
 Hopfield, J., 2, 12, 103  
 Hormones, 32  
 Horse-crab *Limulus*, 48  
 5-HT, *see* Serotonin  
 Hubel, D., 127, 177  
 Hypercomplex cells, 109  
 Hyperpolarization, 16, 58  
 Hypothalamus, 5

**I**

Ideas, 176  
 Inferior, defined, 9  
 Inferior temporal cortex (ITC), 112  
 Information coding, 20  
 Inhibition, presynaptic, 29, 110  
 Inhibitory signals, 14  
 Inputs  
   analog, 75  
   binary, 65  
   excitatory, 67  
   inhibitory, 67  
 Input-output (I/O)  
   channels, 7-9  
   designer specified, 146  
 Instars, 44-48  
   code development theorem, 46  
   defined, 44  
 Intellectual function, *see* Cognition  
 Intelligent machines, 1

Internal regulation, 5  
 Interoceptors, 9  
 Involuntary muscles, 129  
 I/O. *see* Input-output  
 Ion pump, 17-20  
 Ions, depolarization in, 16  
 ITC, *see* Inferior temporal cortex

## J

Johnson's criteria, 128  
 Joints, 9

## K

Kandel, E., 34  
 Kent, E., 11  
 Kernel matrices, 133  
 Korsakoff's syndrome, 173  
 Kosko, B., 102  
 Kuperstein, M., 144, 145

## L

$L_2$  norm, 79  
 Lateral geniculate nucleus (LGN), 105, 109  
 Lateral inhibition, 48  
 Lateral interactions, 48-51, 78  
 Layers, perceptrons in, 89, 90, 102  
 L-DOPA, 167  
 LC, *see* Locus coeruleus  
 Learned helplessness, 52  
 Learning,  
   brain systems in, 23-24  
   fast, 70  
   Instar in, 44-48  
   neural networks in, 135  
   outstar in, 36-41  
   recent findings, 32-33  
   rules in hand-eye systems, 185  
   supervised, 120  
   unsupervised, 65  
 LGN, *see* Lateral geniculate nucleus  
 Limbic system, 10, 229  
 Limulus, response in, 48  
 Lippmann, R., 54, 102  
 Locke, John, 176  
 Locus coeruleus (LC), 170-72  
 Logarithmic distortion, 108, 173  
 Long-term memory (LTM), defined, 25  
 LSD, 173  
 Lyapunov Functions, 62  
   stability in the sense of, 64

## M

Machine vision (MV), 111-26  
 Magnesium, 23  
 Mania, 169, 172  
 Maps  
   gaze, 132-33  
   visual, 132  
 Massive parallel processing, 2  
 Master oscillator, 51  
 Matrix  
   equations, solving, 155-56  
   formulation of state equations, 149-52  
   notation, 46, 73, 81  
 Maunsell, J., 127  
 Maxnet, 51  
 Maxwell, 4  
 McCulloch and Pitts, 32  
 Medulla, 5  
 Membrane, cells in, 14, 15, 17  
   equation, 28  
   permeability, 21  
 Memory, 23-24, *see also* Learning  
 Mental function, *see* Cognition  
 Mental illness, *see* Behavior disorders  
 Metric  
   ART-1, 72  
   ART-2 (norm), 72, 79  
   Genetic algorithm method, 154-55  
 Microtubules, 15  
 Midbrain, 5  
 Minsky, M., 12, 91  
 Mitochondria, neuron, 14  
 Monoamines, 168  
 Monkeys, 4  
 Monoamine neurotransmitters, *see* Neurotransmitters  
 Mood, *see* Affective disorders  
 Motivation, 8  
 Motor cortex, 6, 8, 130  
 Mountcastle, V., 12  
 Muscle  
   antagonistic, 130, 131, 141  
   cardiac, 129  
   extraocular, 178  
   smooth, 129  
   spindles, 20  
   striated, 130  
 MV, *see* Machine vision  
 Myelin, 20

## N

NAC, *see* Nucleus accumbens  
 Neocortex, 6-8  
   sheets, 6

Nervous system, *see* Brain  
 Network equations, 30-32  
   binary model, 31  
 Neural network(s) (NNs)  
   defined, 2  
   network equations, 30-32  
   state equations, 24-30  
   *see* particular types  
 Neurons,  
   cellular features of, 14  
   electrical properties of, 18-19  
   standard model, 14-24  
   synaptic transmitters, 20-24  
 Neuropeptides, 166  
 Neuroscience, 1  
 Neurotransmitters,  
   behavior disorders in, 172-73  
   defined, 18  
   function of, 19  
   GABA, 116  
   learning and memory in, 23-24  
   monamine, 166, 168  
   reuptake, 21  
   secretion of, 21  
   slow and fast, 166  
 Newtonian approach to motor control, 137  
 NN(s), *see* Neural networks  
 Noise, 62, 63  
 Noise-saturation dilemma, 57  
 Nodes, 2  
 Noise suppression, 59, 61-62, 76  
 Norepinephrine (NA), 166  
 Norm  
   ART-2 in, 79  
   Manhattan, 82  
   SUM, 82  
 Nucleus, neuron, 14-15  
 Nucleus accumbens (NAC), 168

## O

Obsessive-compulsive disorders (OCD), 172  
 Occipital lobe, 6  
 OCD, *see* Obsessive-compulsive disorders  
 Oculomotor nuclei, 9, 133  
 Off-center/on-surround cells, 109  
 Olfaction, 10, 12  
 ON CTR/OFF SUR, *see* On-center/off-surround  
 On-center/off-surround (ON CTR/OFF SUR)  
   cells in, 109  
   neural networks, 58-60, 152-53  
 Operator decomposition, 156  
 Optic  
   chiasm, 105  
   nerve, 9  
   radiation, 105

Orientation maps, machine vision in, 133  
 Oscillations  
   circadian, 53  
   gated dipole in, 51-54  
   self-sustained in neural networks, 150  
 Outstars, 36-41  
   defined, 36  
   learning theorem, 40

## P

Pallidum, 130, 168  
 Papert, S., 12, 91  
 Parallel processing, *see* Massive parallel processing  
 Paranoia, 172  
 Parietal lobe, 6  
 Parkinson's disease, 167  
 Passive decay LTM equation, 28  
 Passive update of position (PUP) systems, 141, 144  
 Pathway(s)  
   execution in brain, 168  
   selection in brain, 169  
 Payoff criteria, *see* Genetic algorithm  
 Penrose, R., 12  
 Peptides, 166  
 Perceptrons, 2, 3, 86-102  
   decision region, 86, 101  
   Harvey's method of training, 103  
   structure, 102  
 Philosophical issues, 175  
 Plasticity, 64  
 Pons, 6  
 Posterior parietal (PP), 122  
 Potassium ions, 14  
 PPC commands, 137  
 Primates, 4, 104  
 Processing parallel, *see* Parallel processing  
 Proconsul, 4  
 Proprioceptors, 9  
 Psychiatric disorders, diagnosis of, 172  
 Pulse, axon, 16  
   train frequency, 20  
   periodic, 53  
 Pulvinar nucleus (PT), 109  
 Purkinje cells, 130  
 Pyramidal tract, 130

## Q

Quanta, neurotransmitter releases in, 30-31  
 Quantum, 9, 12  
 Quenching threshold (QT), 62

## R

Race, 4  
 Rana Catesbeiana (frog) model, 56

Raphe dorsalis (RD), 169  
 RD, *see* Raphe dorsalis  
 Recall in outstars, 40  
 Resonance, 66  
 Receptive fields, 109  
 Receptors, retina, 104  
 Recognition,  
   instar in, 46  
   pattern, 46  
 Reflectance coefficients, 38, 41, 45  
 Reticular formation, 10  
 Retinal maps, machine vision in, 133  
 Rosenblatt, F., 2  
 Rosenfeld, A., 126  
 Rule, 2/3 in ART systems, 71  
 Rumelhart, D., 12, 147

**S**

SA, *see* Simulated annealing  
 Saturation, 57  
 Schizophrenia, 234  
 Schwartz, J., 34  
 Selection pathway in brain, 172  
 Self-awareness, 11, *see also* Consciousness  
 Self-learning, 92, 95  
 Senses, 8, 10  
 Sensory cortex, 6, 8  
 Septum, 5  
 Sequential search, ART systems in, 65  
 Serial processing, 2  
 Serotonin (5-HT), 166  
 Short-term memory (STM), defined, 25  
 Shunting STM equation, 28-29, 76, 58  
 Sigmoid function, 27, 86  
   effect on response, 63  
 Sigmoid-of-sums, 152  
 Signals, 63  
   arm-hand, 136  
   axon in, 14, 15  
   enhancement, 61  
   GO, 137, 141  
   performance, 26  
   sampling, 26  
   simplex, 85  
   speed in axons, 16, 20  
 Signal function, 26, 63  
   piecewise linear, 26  
   sigmoid function, 27, 86  
   step function, 27  
   transmission, 14  
 Signal processing, 1, 2  
 Signal-to-noise ratio in neural network design, 158  
 Simple cells, 109  
 Simulated annealing (SA), 147  
 Slabs, perceptrons in, 95  
 Sleep, 5, 8, 170

Sliding-filament model, 130  
 SN, *see* Substantia nigra  
 Sodium-potassium pump, 17-20  
 Somatic, 8  
 Spatial-temporal patterns, 41  
 Spatiotemporal neural networks, *see* Avalanches  
 Speech, 5, 169  
 Spinal cord, 7, 9, 168  
 Spines, 14, 33  
 Stability  
   coding in, 64  
   stability-plasticity dilemma, 64  
   spurious stable point, 85  
   temporal, 62-64  
 State equations for neurons, 24-30  
 State variable formulation, 151-52  
 Stimulus  
   conditioned, 40-41  
   unconditioned, 40-41  
 STM, *see* Short-term memory  
 STR, *see* Striatum  
 Steady state  
   LTM vector, 45  
   response, 39  
 Striate cortex, 6, 107  
 Striatum (STR), 130  
 Structural changes in learning and memory, 32  
 Subsets, 68-70  
 Substantia nigra (SN), 130  
 Subthalamic nucleus, 130  
 Sum-of-sigmoid, 152  
 Superconditioning, 52  
 Superior, defined, 9  
 Superior colliculus (SC), 109  
 Supersets, 68-70  
 Synapses  
   defined, 14  
   excitatory, 15, 18  
   learning and memory in, 22-24  
   postsynaptic density (PSD), 32  
   structure of, 21  
 Synaptic transmission, defined, 20-22  
 Synaptic transmitters, *see* Neurotransmitters  
 Synergy, 138  
 Systems theory, 1-2

**T**

Taste, 8, 9  
 Temporal lobes, 6  
 Thalamus, 6  
 Thinking and consciousness, 10-11, 175-77  
 Threshold  
   human senses in, 10  
   neurons in, 16  
   standard model in, 26  
 Time delay in axons, 26  
 Tongue, muscles of, 130

Top-down trace, 70-71, 79  
 TPC commands, 137  
 Transmitters, *see* Neurotransmitters  
 Tryptophan, 168

**U**

Unconditioned response, defined, 40  
 Unconditioned stimulus, defined, 40  
 Unipolar depression, 172  
 Unit step function, 27, 88

**V**

Van Essen, D., 127  
 Vector-integration-to-endpoint (VITE), 141  
 Ventral tegmentum (VT), 169  
 Veto cells, 163  
 Vigilance, 171  
   ART-1 in, 66  
   ART-2 in, 80  
 Vision  
   brain structures and organizations, 6-10, 104-11  
   neurons with selective response, 109  
   occipital lobe in, 6  
   optic nerve and optic tract, 105  
   processing information, 104-11  
   threshold in human beings, 10

Visual cortex, *see also* Cerebral cortex, Vision  
   processing in, 104-11  
 Visual map, 135  
 VT, *see* Ventral tegmentum

**W**

W-cells, 106  
 Weber-Fechner law  
   defined, 60-61  
   modeled in ART-1, 68-70  
 Weights  
   Genetic algorithm in, 151-61  
   Hopfield neural networks in, 84-85  
   maps, 133  
   perceptrons, 90  
 Werbos, P., 147  
 Wiesel, T., 177  
 Winner-takes-all, 62

**X**

X-cells, 166  
 XOR problem, 91-92

**Y**

Y-cells, 106